



the high-performance embedded kernel

# User Guide

for Green Hills MULTI® Users

Express Logic, Inc.

858.613.6640

Toll Free 888.THREADX

FAX 858.521.4259

<http://www.expresslogic.com>

**©1997-2003 by Express Logic, Inc.**

All rights reserved. This document and the associated ThreadX software are the sole property of Express Logic, Inc. Each contains proprietary information of Express Logic, Inc. Reproduction or duplication by any means of any portion of this document without the prior written consent of Express Logic, Inc. is expressly forbidden.

Express Logic, Inc. reserves the right to make changes to the specifications described herein at any time and without notice in order to improve design or reliability of ThreadX. The information in this document has been carefully checked for accuracy; however, Express Logic, Inc. makes no warranty pertaining to the correctness of this document.

### **Trademarks**

ThreadX is a registered trademark of Express Logic, Inc., and *picokernel*, and *preemption-threshold* are trademarks of Express Logic, Inc.

Green Hills Software and the Green Hills logo are trademarks and MULTI is a registered trademark of Green Hills Software, Inc.

All other product and company names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

### **Warranty Limitations**

Express Logic, Inc. makes no warranty of any kind that the ThreadX products will meet the USER's requirements, or will operate in the manner specified by the USER, or that the operation of the ThreadX products will operate uninterrupted or error free, or that any defects that may exist in the ThreadX products will be corrected after the warranty period. Express Logic, Inc. makes no warranties of any kind, either expressed or implied, including but not limited to the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose, with respect to the ThreadX products. No oral or written information or advice given by Express Logic, Inc., its dealers, distributors, agents, or employees shall create any other warranty or in any way increase the scope of this warranty, and licensee may not rely on any such information or advice.

Part Number: 000-4001  
Revision G4.0c

# Contents

---

## ***Figures 15***

## ***About This Guide 17***

- Organization 17
- Guide Conventions 18
- ThreadX Data Types 19
- Customer Support Center 20
  - Where to Send Comments 20

## ***1 Introduction to ThreadX 21***

- ThreadX Unique Features 22
  - picokernel™ Architecture 22
  - ANSI C Source Code 22
  - Not A Black Box 22
  - A Potential Standard 23
- Embedded Applications 23
  - Real-time Software 23
  - Multitasking 24
  - Tasks vs. Threads 24
- ThreadX Benefits 25
  - Improved Responsiveness 25
  - Software Maintenance 26
  - Increased Throughput 26
  - Processor Isolation 26
  - Dividing the Application 27
  - Ease of Use 27
  - Improve

Time-to-market 27

Protecting the Software Investment 27

## **2 Installation and Use of ThreadX 29**

- Host Considerations 30
- Target Considerations 30
- Product Distribution 31
- ThreadX Installation 33
- Using ThreadX 33
- Small Example System 35
- Troubleshooting 37
- Configuration Options 38
- ThreadX Version ID 40

## **3 Functional Components of ThreadX 41**

- Execution Overview 44
  - Initialization 44
  - Thread Execution 44
  - Interrupt Service Routines (ISR) 44
  - Initialization 45
  - Application Timers 46
- Memory Usage 46
  - Static Memory Usage 46
  - Dynamic Memory Usage 48
- Initialization 48
  - System Reset 49
  - Development Tool Initialization 49
  - main 49
  - tx\_kernel\_enter 49
  - Application Definition Function 50
  - Interrupts 50
- Thread Execution 50
  - Thread Execution States 52
  - Thread Priorities 54

Thread Scheduling	54
Round-Robin Scheduling	54
Time-Slicing	55
Preemption	55
Preemption- Threshold™	56
Priority Inheritance	57
Thread Creation	57
Thread Control Block TX_THREAD	57
Currently Executing Thread	59
Thread Stack Area	59
Memory Pitfalls	61
Reentrancy	62
Thread Priority Pitfalls	62
Priority Overhead	64
Debugging Pitfalls	65
● Message Queues	65
Creating Message Queues	66
Message Size	66
Message Queue Capacity	66
Queue Memory Area	66
Thread Suspension	67
Queue Control Block TX_QUEUE	67
Message Destination Pitfall	68
● Counting Semaphores	68
Mutual Exclusion	68
Event Notification	69
Creating Counting Semaphores	69
Thread Suspension	69
Semaphore Control Block TX_SEMAPHORE	70
Deadly Embrace	70
Priority Inversion	72
● Mutexes	72
Mutex Mutual Exclusion	73
Creating Mutexes	73
Thread Suspension	73
Mutex Control Block TX_MUTEX	74
Deadly Embrace	74
Priority Inversion	74
● Event Flags	75
Creating Event Flag Groups	76

- Thread Suspension 76
- Event Flag Group Control Block  
TX\_EVENT\_FLAGS\_GROUP 76
- Memory Block Pools 77
  - Creating Memory Block Pools 77
  - Memory Block Size 78
  - Pool Capacity 78
  - Pool's Memory Area 78
  - Thread Suspension 78
  - Memory Block Pool Control Block  
TX\_BLOCK\_POOL 79
  - Overwriting Memory Blocks 79
- Memory Byte Pools 79
  - Creating Memory Byte Pools 80
  - Pool Capacity 80
  - Pool's Memory Area 81
  - Thread Suspension 81
  - Memory Byte Pool Control Block  
TX\_BYTE\_POOL 82
  - Un-deterministic Behavior 82
  - Overwriting Memory Blocks 82
- Application Timers 83
  - Timer Intervals 83
  - Timer Accuracy 84
  - Timer Execution 84
  - Creating Application Timers 84
  - Application Timer Control Block TX\_TIMER 84
  - Excessive Timers 85
- Relative Time 85
- Interrupts 85
  - Interrupt Control 86
  - ThreadX Managed Interrupts 86
  - ISR Template 87
  - High-Frequency Interrupts 88
  - Interrupt Latency 88

## **4 Description of ThreadX Services 89**

## **5 I/O Drivers for ThreadX 223**

- I/O Driver Introduction 224
- Driver Functions 224
  - Driver Initialization 225
  - Driver Control 225
  - Driver Access 225
  - Driver Input 225
  - Driver Output 225
  - Driver Interrupts 226
  - Driver Status 226
  - Driver Termination 226
- Simple Driver Example 226
  - Simple Driver Initialization 226
  - Simple Driver Input 228
  - Simple Driver Output 229
  - Simple Driver Shortcomings 230
- Advanced Driver Issues 231
  - I/O Buffering 231
  - Circular Byte Buffers 231
  - Circular Buffer Input 231
  - Circular Output Buffer 233
  - Buffer I/O Management 234
  - TX\_IO\_BUFFER 234
  - Buffered I/O Advantage 235
  - Buffered Driver Responsibilities 235
  - Interrupt Management 237
  - Thread Suspension 237

## **6 Demonstration System for ThreadX 239**

- Overview 240
- Application Define 240
  - Initial Execution 241
- Thread 0 242
- Thread 1 242

- Thread 2 242
- Threads 3 and 4 243
- Thread 5 243
- Threads 6 and 7 244
- Observing the Demonstration 244
- Distribution file: demo.c 245

## **7 Internal Composition of ThreadX 251**

- ThreadX Design Goals 256
  - Simplicity 256
  - Scalability 256
  - High Performance 256
  - ThreadX ANSI C Library 257
  - System Include Files 257
  - System Entry 258
  - Application Definition 258
- Software Components 258
  - ThreadX Components 259
  - Component Specification File 259
  - Component Initialization 260
  - Component Body Functions 260
- Coding Conventions 260
  - ThreadX File Names 261
  - ThreadX Name Space 261
  - ThreadX Constants 262
  - ThreadX Struct and Typedef Names 262
  - ThreadX Member Names 263
  - ThreadX Global Data 263
  - ThreadX Local Data 263
  - ThreadX Function Names 263
  - Source Code Indentation 264
  - Comments 264
- Initialization Component 266
  - TX\_INI.H 266
  - TX\_IHL.C 266
  - TX\_IKE.C 266
  - TX\_ILL.[S, ASM] 267



## ● Thread Component 267

TX\_THR.H 267  
TX\_TC.C 269  
TX\_TCR.[S,ASM] 269  
TX\_TCS.[S,ASM] 270  
TX\_TDEL.C 270  
TX\_TI.C 270  
TX\_TIC.[S,ASM] 270  
TX\_TIDE.C 270  
TX\_TIG.C 270  
TX\_TPC.[S,ASM] 270  
TX\_TPCH.C 271  
TX\_TPRCH.C 271  
TX\_TR.C 271  
TX\_TRA.C 271  
TX\_TREL.C 271  
TX\_TS.[S,ASM] 271  
TX\_TSA.C 271  
TX\_TSB.[S,ASM] 272  
TX\_TSE.C 272  
TX\_TSLE.C 272  
TX\_TSR.[S,ASM] 272  
TX\_TSUS.C 272  
TX\_TT.C 272  
TX\_TTO.C 273  
TX\_TTS.C 273  
TX\_TTSC.C 273  
TX\_TWA.C 273  
TXE\_TC.C 273  
TXE\_TDEL.C 273  
TXE\_TIG.C 273  
TXE\_TPCH.C 273  
TXE\_TRA.C 274  
TXE\_TREL.C 274  
TXE\_TRPC.C 274  
TXE\_TSA.C 274  
TXE\_TT.C 274  
TXE\_TTSC.C 274  
TXE\_TWA.C 274

## ● Timer Component 275

TX\_TIM.H 275

TX\_TA.C 277  
TX\_TAA.C 278  
TX\_TD.C 278  
TX\_TDA.C 278  
TX\_TIMCH.C 278  
TX\_TIMCR.C 278  
TX\_TIMD.C 278  
TX\_TIMEG.C 278  
TX\_TIMES.C 278  
TX\_TIMI.C 279  
TX\_TIMIG.C 279  
TX\_TIMIN.[S,ASM] 279  
TX\_TTE.C 279  
TXE\_TAA.C 279  
TXE\_TDA.C 279  
TXE\_TIMD.C 279  
TXE\_TIMI.C 279  
TXE\_TMCH.C 280  
TXE\_TMCR.C 280

● Queue Component 280

TX\_QUE.H 280  
TX\_QC.C 280  
TX\_QCLE.C 281  
TX\_QD.C 281  
TX\_QF.C 281  
TX\_QFS.C 281  
TX\_QI.C 281  
TX\_QIG.C 281  
TX\_QP.C 281  
TX\_QR.C 281  
TX\_QS.C 282  
TXE\_QC.C 282  
TXE\_QD.C 282  
TXE\_QF.C 282  
TXE\_QFS.C 282  
TXE\_QIG.C 282  
TXE\_QP.C 282  
TXE\_QR.C 282  
TXE\_QS.C 283

● Semaphore Component 283

TX\_SEM.H 283

TX\_SC.C 283  
TX\_SCLE.C 284  
TX\_SD.C 284  
TX\_SG.C 284  
TX\_SI.C 284  
TX\_SIG.C 284  
TX\_SP.C 284  
TX\_SPRI.C 284  
TXE\_SC.C 284  
TXE\_SD.C 285  
TXE\_SG.C 285  
TXE\_SIG.C 285  
TXE\_SP.C 285  
TXE\_SPRI.C 285

● Mutex Component 285

TX\_MUT.H 285  
TX\_MC.C 286  
TX\_MCLE.C 286  
TX\_MD.C 286  
TX\_MG.C 286  
TX\_MI.C 286  
TX\_MIG.C 287  
TX\_MP.C 287  
TX\_MPC.C 287  
TX\_MPRI.C 287  
TXE\_MC.C 287  
TXE\_MD.C 287  
TXE\_MG.C 287  
TXE\_MIG.C 287  
TXE\_MP.C 288  
TXE\_MPRI.C 288

● Event Flag Component 288

TX\_EVE.H 288  
TX\_EFC.C 289  
TX\_EFCLE.C 289  
TX\_EFD.C 289  
TX\_EFG.C 289  
TX\_EFI.C 289  
TX\_EFIG.C 289  
TX\_EFS.C 289  
TXE\_EFC.C 289

TXE\_EFD.C 290  
TXE\_EFG.C 290  
TXE\_EFIG.C 290  
TXE\_EFS.C 290

● Block Memory Component 290

TX\_BLO.H 290  
TX\_BA.C 291  
TX\_BPC.C 291  
TX\_BPCLE.C 291  
TX\_BPD.C 291  
TX\_BPI.C 291  
TX\_BPIG.C 291  
TX\_BPP.C 292  
TX\_BR.C 292  
TXE\_BA.C 292  
TXE\_BPC.C 292  
TXE\_BPD.C 292  
TXE\_BPIG.C 292  
TXE\_BPP.C 292  
TXE\_BR.C 292

● Byte Memory Component 293

TX\_BYT.H 293  
TX\_BYTA.C 293  
TX\_BYTC.C 293  
TX\_BYTCL.C 294  
TX\_BYTD.C 294  
TX\_BYTI.C 294  
TX\_BYTIG.C 294  
TX\_BYTPP.C 294  
TX\_BYTR.C 294  
TX\_BYTS.C 294  
TXE\_BYTA.C 295  
TXE\_BYTC.C 295  
TXE\_BYTD.C 295  
TXE\_BYTG.C 295  
TXE\_BYTP.C 295  
TXE\_BYTR.C 295

***A ThreadX API Services 297***

Entry Function 298  
Byte Memory Services 298  
Block Memory Services 298  
Event Flag Services 299  
Interrupt Control 299  
Message Queue Services 299  
Semaphore Services 300  
Mutex Services 300  
Thread Control Services 301  
Time Services 301  
Timer Services 301

***B ThreadX Constants 303***

Alphabetic Listings 304  
Listing by Value 306

***C ThreadX Data Types 309******D ThreadX Source Files 315***

- ThreadX C Include Files 316
- ThreadX C Source Files 316
- ThreadX Port Assembly Language Files 322

***E ASCII Character Codes 323***

- ASCII Character Codes in HEX 324

***Index 325***





# Figures

---

<i>Figure 1</i>	<i>Template for Application Development 36</i>
<i>Figure 2</i>	<i>Types of Program Execution 45</i>
<i>Figure 3</i>	<i>Memory Area Example 47</i>
<i>Figure 4</i>	<i>Initialization Process 51</i>
<i>Figure 5</i>	<i>Thread State Transition 53</i>
<i>Figure 6</i>	<i>Typical Thread Stack 60</i>
<i>Figure 7</i>	<i>Stack Preset to 0xEFEF 61</i>
<i>Figure 8</i>	<i>Example of Suspended Threads 71</i>
<i>Figure 9</i>	<i>Simple Driver Initialization 228</i>
<i>Figure 10</i>	<i>Simple Driver Input 229</i>
<i>Figure 11</i>	<i>Simple Driver Output 230</i>
<i>Figure 12</i>	<i>Logic for Circular Input Buffer 232</i>
<i>Figure 13</i>	<i>Logic for Circular Output Buffer 233</i>
<i>Figure 14</i>	<i>I/O Buffer 234</i>
<i>Figure 15</i>	<i>Input-Output Lists 236</i>
<i>Figure 16</i>	<i>ThreadX File Header Example 265</i>







# About This Guide

---

This guide provides comprehensive information about ThreadX, the high-performance real-time kernel from Express Logic, Inc.

It is intended for the embedded real-time software developer. The developer should be familiar with standard real-time operating system functions and the C programming language.

## Organization

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| <b>Chapter 1</b> | Provides a basic overview of ThreadX and its relationship to real-time embedded development.           |
| <b>Chapter 2</b> | Gives the basic steps to install and use ThreadX in your application right <i>out of the box</i> .     |
| <b>Chapter 3</b> | Describes in detail the functional operation of ThreadX, the high-performance real-time kernel.        |
| <b>Chapter 4</b> | Details the application's interface to ThreadX.  |
| <b>Chapter 5</b> | Describes writing I/O drivers for ThreadX applications.  |
| <b>Chapter 6</b> | Describes the demonstration application that is supplied with every ThreadX processor support package. |

<b>Chapter 7</b>	Details the internal construction of ThreadX.
<b>Appendix A</b>	ThreadX API
<b>Appendix B</b>	ThreadX constants
<b>Appendix C</b>	ThreadX data types
<b>Appendix D</b>	ThreadX source files
<b>Appendix E</b>	ASCII chart
<b>Index</b>	Topic cross reference

## Guide Conventions

*Italics* typeface denotes book titles, emphasizes important words, and indicates variables.

**Boldface** typeface denotes file names, key words, and further emphasizes important words and variables.



Information symbols draw attention to important or additional information that could affect performance or function.



Warning symbols draw attention to situations in which developers should take care to avoid because they could cause fatal errors.

## ThreadX Data Types

In addition to the custom ThreadX control structure data types, there are a series of special data types that are used in ThreadX service call interfaces. These special data types map directly to data types of the underlying C compiler. This is done to insure portability between different C compilers. The exact implementation can be found in the ***tx\_port.h*** file included on the distribution disk.

The following is a list of ThreadX service call data types and their associated meanings:

<b>UINT</b>	Basic unsigned integer. This type must support 8-bit unsigned data; however, it is mapped to the most convenient unsigned data type, which may support 16- or 32-bit signed data.
<b>ULONG</b>	Unsigned long type. This type must support 32-bit unsigned data.
<b>VOID</b>	Almost always equivalent to the compiler's void type.
<b>CHAR</b>	Most often a standard 8-bit character type.

Additional data types are used within the ThreadX source. They are also located in the ***tx\_port.h*** file.

## Customer Support Center

Support engineers	858.613.6640
Support fax	858.521.4259
Support email	support@expresslogic.com
Web page	<a href="http://www.expresslogic.com">http://www.expresslogic.com</a>

### Where to Send Comments

The staff at Express Logic is always striving to provide you with better products. To help us achieve this goal, email any comments and suggestions to the Customer Support Center at

[comments@expresslogic.com](mailto:comments@expresslogic.com)

Please type “technical publication” in the subject line.

# *Introduction to ThreadX*

---

ThreadX is a high-performance real-time kernel designed specifically for embedded applications. This chapter contains an introduction to the product and a description of its applications and benefits.

- ThreadX Unique Features 22
  - picokernel™ Architecture 22
  - ANSI C Source Code 22
  - Not A Black Box 22
  - A Potential Standard 23
- Embedded Applications 23
  - Real-time Software 23
  - Multitasking 24
  - Tasks vs. Threads 24
- ThreadX Benefits 25
  - Improved Responsiveness 25
  - Software Maintenance 26
  - Increased Throughput 26
  - Processor Isolation 26
  - Dividing the Application 27
  - Ease of Use 27
  - Improve
  - Time-to-market 27
  - Protecting the Software Investment 27

## ThreadX Unique Features

Unlike other real-time kernels, ThreadX is designed to be versatile—easily scaling among small micro-controller-based applications through those that use powerful RISC and DSP processors.

What makes ThreadX so scalable? The reason is based on its underlying architecture. Because ThreadX services are implemented as a C library, only those services actually used by the application are brought into the run-time image. Hence, the actual size of ThreadX is completely determined by the application. For most applications, the instruction image of ThreadX ranges between 2 KBytes and 15 KBytes in size.

### ***picokernel***<sup>™</sup> Architecture

What about performance? Instead of layering kernel functions on top of each other like traditional *microkernel* architectures, ThreadX services plug directly into its core. This results in the fastest possible context switching and service call performance. We call this non-layering design a *picokernel* architecture.

### **ANSI C Source Code**

ThreadX is written primarily in ANSI C. A small amount of assembly language is needed to tailor the kernel to the underlying target processor. This design makes it possible to port ThreadX to a new processor family in a very short time—usually within weeks!

### **Not A Black Box**

Most distributions of ThreadX include the complete C source code as well as the processor-specific assembly language. This eliminates the “black-box” problems that occur with many commercial kernels. By using ThreadX, application developers can see

exactly what the kernel is doing—there are no mysteries!

The source code also allows for application specific modifications. Although not recommended, it is certainly beneficial to have the ability to modify the kernel if it is absolutely required.

These features are especially comforting to developers accustomed to working with their own *in-house kernels*. They expect to have source code and the ability to modify the kernel. ThreadX is the ultimate kernel for such developers.

### A Potential Standard

Because of its versatility, high-performance *picokernel* architecture, and great portability, ThreadX has the potential to become an industry standard for embedded applications.

## Embedded Applications

What is an embedded application? Embedded applications are applications that execute on microprocessors buried inside of products like cellular phones, communication equipment, automobile engines, laser printers, medical devices, etc. Another distinction of embedded applications is that their software and hardware have a dedicated purpose.

### Real-time Software

When time constraints are imposed on the application software, it is given the *real-time* label. Basically, software that must perform its processing within an exact period of time is called *real-time* software. Embedded applications are almost always real-time because of their inherent interaction with the external world.

## Multitasking

As mentioned, embedded applications have a dedicated purpose. In order to fulfill this purpose, the software must perform a variety of duties or *tasks*. A task is a semi-independent portion of the application that carries out a specific duty. It is also the case that some tasks or duties are more important than others. One of the major difficulties in an embedded application is the allocation of the processor between the various application tasks. This allocation of processing between competing tasks is the primary purpose of ThreadX.

## Tasks vs. Threads

Another distinction about tasks must be made. The term task is used in a variety of ways. It sometimes means a separately loadable program. In other instances, it might refer to an internal program segment.

In contemporary operating system discussion, there are two terms that more or less replace the use of task, namely *process* and *thread*. A *process* is a completely independent program that has its own address space, while a *thread* is a semi-independent program segment that executes within a process. Threads share the same process address space. The overhead associated with thread management is minimal.

Most embedded applications cannot afford the overhead (both memory and performance) associated with a full-blown process-oriented operating system. In addition, smaller microprocessors don't have the hardware architecture to support a true process-oriented operating system. For these reasons, ThreadX implements a thread model, which is both extremely efficient and practical for most real-time embedded applications.



To avoid confusion, ThreadX does not use the term *task*. Instead, the more descriptive and contemporary name *thread* is used.

## ThreadX Benefits

Using ThreadX provides many benefits to embedded applications. Of course, the primary benefit rests in how embedded application threads are allocated processing time.

### Improved Responsiveness

Prior to real-time kernels like ThreadX, most embedded applications allocated processing time with a simple control loop, usually from within the C *main* function. This approach is still used in very small or simple applications. However, in large or complex applications it is not practical because the response time to any event is a function of the worst-case processing time of one pass through the control loop.

Making matters worse, the timing characteristics of the application change whenever modifications are made to the control loop. This makes the application inherently unstable and very difficult to maintain and improve on.

ThreadX provides fast and deterministic response times to important external events. ThreadX accomplishes this through its preemptive, priority-based scheduling algorithm, which allows a higher-priority thread to preempt an executing lower-priority thread. As a result, the worst-case response time approaches the time required to perform a context switch. This is not only deterministic, but it is also extremely fast.

## Software Maintenance

The ThreadX kernel enables application developers to concentrate on specific requirements of their application threads without having to worry about changing the timing of other areas of the application. This feature also makes it much easier to repair or enhance an application that utilizes ThreadX.

## Increased Throughput

A possible work-around to the control loop response time problem is to add more polling. This improves the responsiveness, but still doesn't guarantee a constant worst-case response time and does nothing to enhance future modification of the application. Also, the processor is now performing even more unnecessary processing because of the extra polling. All of this unnecessary processing reduces the overall throughput of the system.

An interesting point regarding overhead is that many developers assume that multi-threaded environments like ThreadX increase overhead and have a negative impact on total system throughput. But in some cases, multi-threading actually reduces overhead by eliminating all of the redundant polling that occurs in control loop environments. The overhead associated with multi-threaded kernels is typically a function of the time required for context switching. If the context switch time is less than the polling process, ThreadX provides a solution with the potential of less overhead and more throughput. This makes ThreadX an obvious choice for applications that have any degree of complexity or size.

## Processor Isolation

ThreadX provides a robust processor-independent interface between the application and the underlying processor. This allows developers to concentrate on the application rather than spending a significant amount of time learning hardware details.

## **Dividing the Application**

In control loop-based applications, each developer must have an intimate knowledge of the entire application's run-time behavior and requirements. This is because the processor allocation logic is dispersed throughout the entire application. As an application increases in size or complexity, it becomes impossible for all developers to remember the precise processing requirements of the entire application.

ThreadX frees each developer from the worries associated with processor allocation and allows them to concentrate on their specific piece of the embedded application. In addition, ThreadX forces the application to be divided into clearly defined threads. By itself, this division of the application into threads makes development much simpler.

## **Ease of Use**

ThreadX is designed with the application developer in mind. The ThreadX architecture and service call interface are designed to be easily understood. As a result, ThreadX developers can quickly use its advanced features.

## **Improve Time-to-market**

All of the benefits of ThreadX accelerate the software development process. ThreadX takes care of most processor issues, thereby removing this effort from the development schedule. All of this results in a faster time to market!

## **Protecting the Software Investment**

Because of its architecture, ThreadX is easily ported to new processor environments. This, coupled with the fact ThreadX insulates applications from details of the underlying processors, makes ThreadX applications highly portable. As a result, the application's migration path is guaranteed and the original development investment is protected.

A large, light gray watermark of the ThreadX logo is centered on the page. It consists of the word "THREAD" in a spaced-out, sans-serif font, followed by a large, bold "X" that is partially enclosed by a light gray oval shape.

## ***Installation and Use of ThreadX***

---

This chapter contains a description of various issues related to installation, setup, and usage of the high-performance ThreadX kernel with the Green Hills MULTI development environment.

- Host Considerations 30
- Target Considerations 30
- Product Distribution 31
- ThreadX Installation 33
- Using ThreadX 33
- Small Example System 35
- Troubleshooting 37
- Configuration Options 38
- ThreadX Version ID 40

## Host Considerations

Embedded development is usually performed on Windows or Unix host computers. After the application is compiled and linked, it is downloaded to the target hardware for execution. Target download is typically done through the debug interface, which is typically JTAG. However, downloading can also be done over serial, parallel, and Ethernet interfaces. Review the Green Hills “Target Connection User's Guide” for available debug connection options.

The source code for ThreadX is delivered in ASCII format and requires approximately 1 MByte of space on the host computer's hard disk.

*i*

*Please review the supplied **readme.txt** file for additional host system considerations and options.*

## Target Considerations

ThreadX requires between 2 KBytes and 20 KBytes of Read Only Memory (ROM) on the target. Another 1 to 2 KBytes of the target's Random Access Memory (RAM) are required for the ThreadX system stack and other global data structures. For proper operation of timer-related functions such as service call time-outs, time-slicing, and application timers, the target hardware must provide a periodic interrupt source. If the processor has this capability built-in, it is utilized by ThreadX. Otherwise, if the target processor does not have the ability to generate a periodic interrupt, the user's hardware must provide it. Setup and configuration of the timer interrupt is located in the **tx\_ill** assembly file in the ThreadX distribution.



*If no periodic timer interrupt source is available, ThreadX is still functional. However, none of the timer-related services are functional. Please review the supplied **readme.txt** file for any additional host system considerations and/or options.*

## Product Distribution

ThreadX is shipped on a single CD-ROM compatible disk. Two types of ThreadX packages are available— *standard* and *premium*. The *standard* package includes minimal source code, while the *premium* package contains complete ThreadX source code.

The exact contents of the distribution disk depends on the target processor and the ThreadX package purchased. Following is a list of several important files that are common to most product distributions:

<b>readme.txt</b>	This file contains specific information about the ThreadX port, including information about the target processor and the Green Hills MULTI tools.
<b>tx_api.h</b>	This C header file contains all system equates, data structures, and service prototypes.
<b>tx_port.h</b>	This C header file contains all Green Hills MULTI specific data definitions and structures.
<b>demo.c</b>	This C file contains a small demo application.

<b>demo.bld</b>	This Green Hills MULTI build file defines how to build the ThreadX demonstration.
<b>demo_el.bld</b>	This Green Hills MULTI build file is the same as <b>demo.bld</b> , except that it enables event logging for the ThreadX demonstration. Note that it requires the ThreadX library built by <b>txe.bld</b> .
<b>demo.ld</b>	This linker control file specifies where the demo application resides in the target memory.
<b>demo_el.ld</b>	This linker control file is the same as <b>demo.ld</b> , except it also allocates target memory for event logging.
<b>tx.bld</b>	This Green Hills MULTI build file defines how to build the ThreadX C library. It is distributed with the <i>premium</i> package.
<b>txe.bld</b>	This Green Hills MULTI build file is the same as <b>tx.bld</b> , except that it enables event logging throughout the ThreadX C library. It is also distributed only with the <i>premium</i> package.
<b>tx.a</b>	This is the binary version of the ThreadX C library. It is distributed with the <i>standard</i> package.



*All files and batch file commands are in lower-case. This naming convention makes it easier to convert the commands to Unix development platforms.*



# ThreadX Installation

Installation of ThreadX is straightforward. The steps below apply to virtually all ThreadX installations. However, please refer to the supplied **Express Start Guide** and **readme.txt** file for information about specific ThreadX distribution.

**Step 1:**

Backup the ThreadX distribution disk and store it in a safe location.

**Step 2:**

On the host hard drive, make a unique ThreadX directory. The ThreadX distribution will reside in this directory.

**Step 3:**

Copy all files from the ThreadX distribution CD-ROM into the directory created in step 2.

**Step 4:**

If the standard package was ordered, installation of ThreadX is now complete. If the premium package was purchased, invoke Green Hills MULTI and open the ThreadX build file **tx.bld**.

**Step 5:**

Next, select the **BUILD** button and observe the ThreadX library being built. When this completes, the resulting ThreadX library file (**tx.a**) can be used by the application.

*i*

*Application software needs access to the ThreadX library file **tx.a** and the C include files **tx\_api.h** and **tx\_port.h**. This is accomplished either by setting the appropriate path for the development tools or by copying these files into the application development area.*

## Using ThreadX

Using ThreadX is easy. Basically, the application code must include **tx\_api.h** during compilation and link with the ThreadX run-time library **tx.a**. The easiest way to create a new ThreadX-based

application is to use MULTI's new project wizard. See the MULTI documentation for detailed instructions. When creating the project, be sure to select ThreadX as the Operating System on the first pane of the new project wizard. You should also choose a board that is similar to the one you will be using.

You can specify various other options, including the location of your ThreadX distribution. When the wizard completes, you will have either a demonstration program or a simple framework project ready to edit.

In general, there are four steps required to build a ThreadX application:

**Step 1:**

Include the ***tx\_api.h*** file in all application files that use ThreadX services or data structures.

**Step 2:**

Create the standard C ***main*** function. This function must eventually call ***tx\_kernel\_enter*** to start ThreadX. Application-specific initialization that does not involve ThreadX may be added prior to calling ***tx\_kernel\_enter***.



*The ThreadX entry function ***tx\_kernel\_enter*** does not return. Make certain that you do not place any processing or function calls after it.*

**Step 3:**

Create the ***tx\_application\_define*** function. This is where the initial system resources are created. Examples of system resources include threads, queues, memory pools, event flag groups, mutexes, and semaphores.

**Step 4:**

Create a Green Hills MULTI build file that contains the ThreadX initialization file ***tx\_ill***, the application source files, and the linker control file. In addition, the build file must be setup to use the previously built ThreadX library file, ***tx.a***.



The supplied demonstration build file **demo.bld** and linker control file **demo.ld** may be used as templates.

**Step 5:**

Once the application's build file is created, select the project **BUILD** button in the MULTI environment. The resulting image can be executed on the target.

**Step 6:**

To execute on the target, the debugger must first be connected to the target. This is accomplished by selecting the **CONNECT** button from the MULTI environment. After the connection is complete, the application can be downloaded and debugged by selecting the **DEBUG** button.

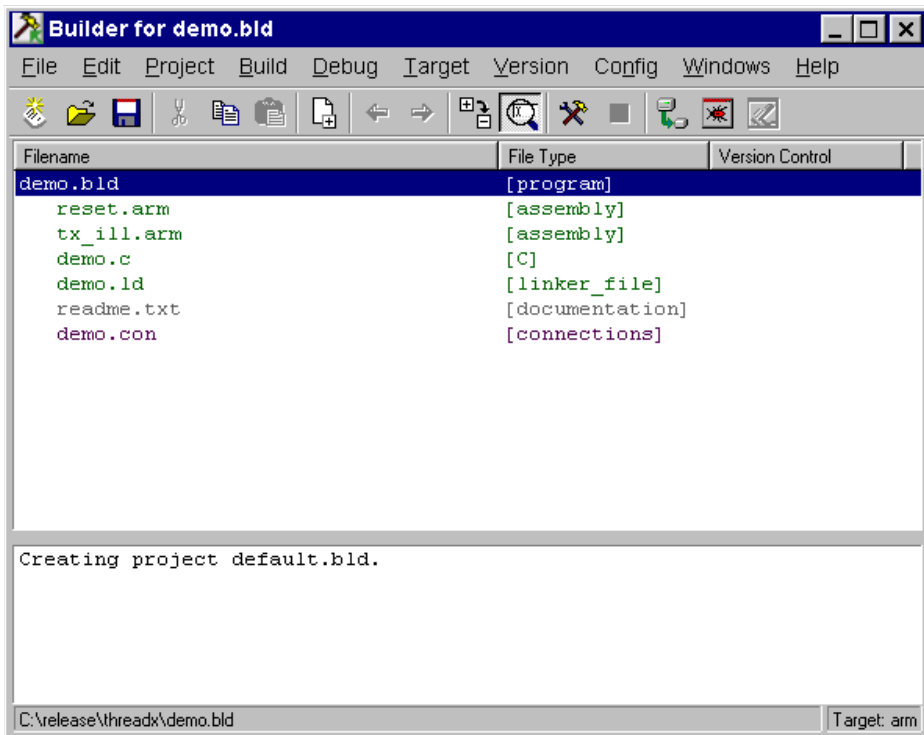
## Small Example System

Each ThreadX distribution contains a complete demonstration system that runs using MULTI's processor simulation or actual evaluation hardware. The file **demo.c** contains the demonstration source, which is described in Chapter 5. To build the demonstration, simply load **demo.bld** and select the project **BUILD** button (assuming the ThreadX library **tx.a** has already been built with **tx.bld**).

Once the ThreadX demonstration has been built, it can be executed under the MULTI debugger. The first step is to connect MULTI to the target by selecting the **CONNECT** button. After the connection is established, the demonstration can be downloaded and debugged by selecting the **DEBUG** button. Figure 1, "Template for Application Development," on page 36 shows the **demo.bld** file loaded in the MULTI environment.

Note that there are several additional files in **demo.bld**, namely **reset.arm** and **demo.con**. The **reset.arm** file contains the ARM processor's reset vector code as well as the other vectors in architecture.

Each processor support package has its own unique reset file, e.g. **reset.ppc** (PowerPC), **reset.mip** (MIPS), **reset.sh** (Hitachi SH), **reset.68** (68K/ColdFire), etc. The **demo.con** file contains information that specifies the target connection. Connections to actual hardware targets as well as MULTI's extensive set of architecture simulators are specified in this file.



**FIGURE 1. Template for Application Development**

Although **demo.bld** is a simple example, it provides a good template for real application development. Once again, please refer to the distribution's **Express Start Guide** and **readme.txt** file for additional details.

# Troubleshooting

Each ThreadX port is delivered with a demonstration application. It is always a good idea to get the demonstration system running first—either on actual target hardware or the specific demonstration environment (simulator and/or evaluation board).

Use the **demo.bld** project to build the demonstration and download it to the target, as described in the previous section. If all the thread counters **thread\_0\_counter** through **thread\_7\_counter** continuously increment, the demonstration is working correctly. If not, the following troubleshooting steps will help isolate the problem:

## Step 1:

Is the download successful? If the download fails, check to make sure the addresses specified in **demo.ld** are valid for the target hardware.

## Step 2:

If the system runs such that all threads execute once, but only threads 1 and 2 continue to run, then the periodic timer interrupt is not working. Check the **readme.txt** file for information about the ThreadX timer interrupt.

## Step 3:

If the system crashes or exhibits very strange behavior, stack overflow could be present. In such cases, increasing stack sizes is generally a good idea. Stack usage can be checked with the ThreadX debugging features found in the Green Hills MULTI tools.

*i*

*The ThreadX demonstration should not have any stack size problems, assuming no modifications have been made.*

## Step 4:

If the system crash persists, disable all interrupt sources. The ThreadX periodic timer interrupt is typically setup in **tx\_ill**.

If this solves the problem, the system stack setup by MULTI might be too small or application ISRs don't conform to the format specified in **readme.txt**.

**Step 5:**

Determine how far the system runs and contact Express Logic support with the information gathered.

*i*

See the **readme.txt** file supplied with the distribution for more specific details regarding the demonstration system and specific hardware issues to be aware of.

## Configuration Options

There are several configuration options available for ThreadX using the Green Hills MULTI tools, as follows:

### **TX\_DISABLE\_ERROR\_CHECKING**

This conditional compilation flag is used to bypass service call error checking. If the condition compilation flag is defined within an application C file, all basic parameter error checking is disabled. This option is used to improve performance (by as much as 30%). However, this should only be used after the application is thoroughly debugged.

*i*

ThreadX API return values **NOT** affected by disabling error checking are listed in **bold** in the "Return Values" section of the API description in Chapter 4. The non-bold return values are void if error checking is disabled by **TX\_DISABLE\_ERROR\_CHECKING** option.

### **TX\_DISABLE\_STACK\_CHECKING**

By default, the thread create

function fills the thread's stack with a 0xEF data pattern, which is used by the MULTI debugger to calculate stack usage. This can be disabled by compiling the ThreadX source file **tx\_tc.c** with this conditional compilation flag defined.

#### **TX\_ENABLE\_EVENT\_LOGGING**

Defining this conditional compilation flag enables event logging for the associated ThreadX C source file. If this option is used anywhere, the **tx\_ihl.c** file must be compiled with this flag defined, since this is where the event log is initialized. The **txe.bld** and **demo\_el.bld** files found in the distribution utilize this define to enable event logging throughout the ThreadX library and demonstration system.

#### **TX\_ENABLE\_MULTI\_ERROR\_CHECKING**

This conditional compilation flag enables automatic MULTI error checking for the ThreadX API calls. Basically, all non-bold ThreadX API return values can be detected by MULTI automatically if the ThreadX application is built with this conditional defined. After the application is fully debugged, it can be re-built with **TX\_DISABLE\_ERROR\_CHECKING** to remove unnecessary error checking code from the final image.

#### **TX\_NO\_EVENT\_INFO**

This conditional compilation flag is a sub-option for event logging. If this flag is defined, only basic information is saved in the log. If

needed, this option should be added to the ***txe.bld*** file.

#### **TX\_ENABLE\_EVENT\_FILTERS**

This conditional compilation flag is another sub-option for event logging. If this flag is defined, run-time filtering logic is added to the event logging code. If needed, this option should be added to the ***txe.bld*** file.

Additional conditional compilation options are described in the ***readme.txt*** supplied on the distribution disk.

## ThreadX Version ID

The current version of ThreadX is available to both the user and the application software during run-time. The programmer can find the ThreadX version in the ***readme.txt*** file. This file also contains a version history of the corresponding port. Application software can obtain the ThreadX version by examining the global string ***\_tx\_version\_id***.



# *Functional Components of ThreadX*

---

This chapter contains a description of the high-performance ThreadX kernel from a functional perspective. Each functional component is presented in an easy-to-understand manner.

- Execution Overview 44
  - Initialization 44
  - Thread Execution 44
  - Interrupt Service Routines (ISR) 44
  - Initialization 45
  - Application Timers 46
- Memory Usage 46
  - Static Memory Usage 46
  - Dynamic Memory Usage 48
- Initialization 48
  - System Reset 49
  - Development Tool Initialization 49
  - main 49
  - tx\_kernel\_enter 49
  - Application Definition Function 50
  - Interrupts 50
- Thread Execution 50
  - Thread Execution States 52
  - Thread Priorities 54
  - Thread Scheduling 54
  - Round-Robin Scheduling 54
  - Time-Slicing 55
  - Preemption 55
  - Preemption- Threshold™ 56
  - Priority Inheritance 57
  - Thread Creation 57

- Thread Control Block TX\_THREAD 57
- Currently Executing Thread 59
- Thread Stack Area 59
- Memory Pitfalls 61
- Reentrancy 62
- Thread Priority Pitfalls 62
- Priority Overhead 64
- Debugging Pitfalls 65
- Message Queues 65
  - Creating Message Queues 66
  - Message Size 66
  - Message Queue Capacity 66
  - Queue Memory Area 66
  - Thread Suspension 67
  - Queue Control Block TX\_QUEUE 67
  - Message Destination Pitfall 68
- Counting Semaphores 68
  - Mutual Exclusion 68
  - Event Notification 69
  - Creating Counting Semaphores 69
  - Thread Suspension 69
  - Semaphore Control Block TX\_SEMAPHORE 70
  - Deadly Embrace 70
  - Priority Inversion 72
- Mutexes 72
  - Mutex Mutual Exclusion 73
  - Creating Mutexes 73
  - Thread Suspension 73
  - Mutex Control Block TX\_MUTEX 74
  - Deadly Embrace 74
  - Priority Inversion 74
- Event Flags 75
  - Creating Event Flag Groups 76
  - Thread Suspension 76
  - Event Flag Group Control Block TX\_EVENT\_FLAGS\_GROUP 76
- Memory Block Pools 77
  - Creating Memory Block Pools 77
  - Memory Block Size 78
  - Pool Capacity 78

- Pool's Memory Area 78
- Thread Suspension 78
- Memory Block Pool Control Block
- TX\_BLOCK\_POOL 79
- Overwriting Memory Blocks 79
- Memory Byte Pools 79
  - Creating Memory Byte Pools 80
  - Pool Capacity 80
  - Pool's Memory Area 81
  - Thread Suspension 81
  - Memory Byte Pool Control Block
  - TX\_BYTE\_POOL 82
  - Un-deterministic Behavior 82
  - Overwriting Memory Blocks 82
- Application Timers 83
  - Timer Intervals 83
  - Timer Accuracy 84
  - Timer Execution 84
  - Creating Application Timers 84
  - Application Timer Control Block TX\_TIMER 84
  - Excessive Timers 85
- Relative Time 85
- Interrupts 85
  - Interrupt Control 86
  - ThreadX Managed Interrupts 86
  - ISR Template 87
  - High-Frequency Interrupts 88
  - Interrupt Latency 88

## Execution Overview

There are four types of program execution within a ThreadX application: Initialization, Thread Execution, Interrupt Service Routines (ISRs), and Application Timers.

Figure 2 on page 45 shows each different type of program execution. More detailed information about each of these types is found in subsequent sections of this chapter.

### Initialization

As the name implies, this is the first type of program execution in a ThreadX application. Initialization includes all program execution between processor reset and the entry point of the *thread scheduling loop*.

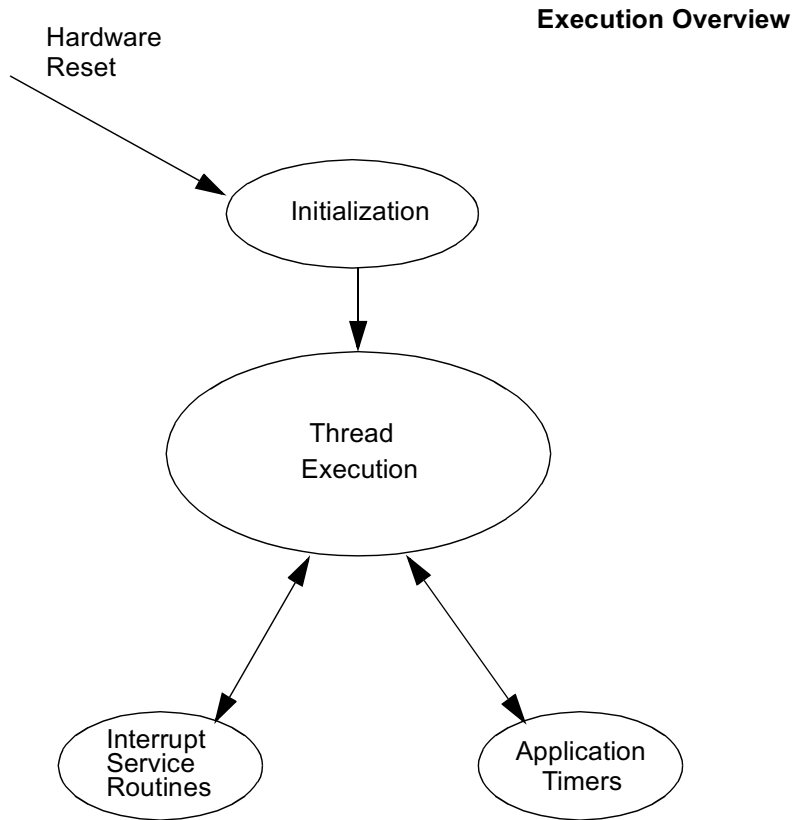
### Thread Execution

After initialization is complete, ThreadX enters its thread scheduling loop. The scheduling loop looks for an application thread ready for execution. When a ready thread is found, ThreadX transfers control to it. Once the thread is finished (or another higher-priority thread becomes ready), execution transfers back to the thread scheduling loop in order to find the next highest priority ready thread.

This process of continually executing and scheduling threads is the most common type of program execution in ThreadX applications.

### Interrupt Service Routines (ISR)

Interrupts are the cornerstone of real-time systems. Without interrupts it would be extremely difficult to respond to changes in the external world in a timely manner. What happens when an interrupt occurs? Upon detection of an interrupt, the processor saves key information about the current program execution



**FIGURE 2. Types of Program Execution**

(usually on the stack), then transfers control to a predefined program area. This predefined program area is commonly called an Interrupt Service Routine.

What type of program execution was interrupted? In most cases, interrupts occur during thread execution (or in the thread scheduling loop). However,

interrupts may also occur inside of an executing ISR or an Application Timer.

## Application Timers

Application timers are very similar to ISRs, except the actual hardware implementation (usually a single periodic hardware interrupt is used) is hidden from the application. Such timers are used by applications to perform time-outs, periodics, and/or watchdog services. Just like ISRs, application timers most often interrupt thread execution. Unlike ISRs, however, Application Timers cannot interrupt each other.

## Memory Usage

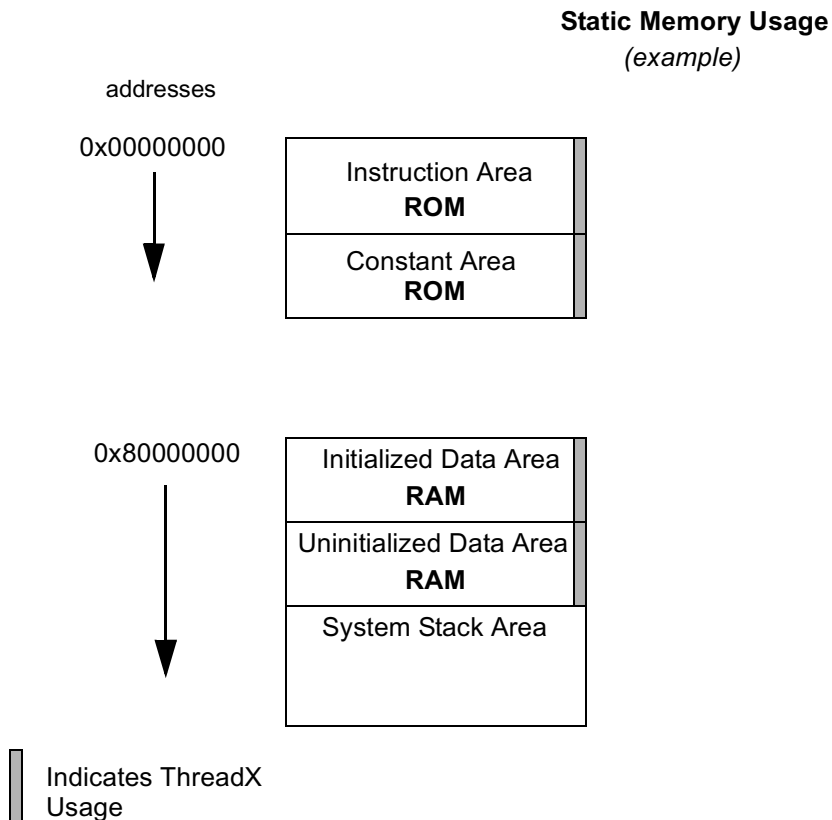
ThreadX resides along with the application program. As a result, the static memory (or fixed memory) usage of ThreadX is determined by the development tools; e.g., the compiler, linker, and locator. Dynamic memory (or run-time memory) usage is under direct control of the application.

### Static Memory Usage

Most of the development tools divide the application program image into five basic areas: *instruction*, *constant*, *initialized data*, *uninitialized data*, and *system stack*. Figure 3 on page 47 shows an example of these memory areas.

It is important to realize that this is only an example. The actual static memory layout is specific to the processor, development tools, and the underlying hardware.

The instruction area contains all of the program's processor instructions. This area is typically the largest and is often located in ROM.

**FIGURE 3. Memory Area Example**

The constant area contains various compiled constants, including strings defined or referenced within the program. In addition, this area contains the “initial copy” of the initialized data area. During the compiler’s initialization process, this portion of the constant area is used to setup the initialized data area in RAM. The constant area usually follows the instruction area and is often located in ROM.

The initialized data and uninitialized data areas contain all of the global and static variables. These areas are always located in RAM.

The system stack is generally setup immediately following the initialized and uninitialized data areas. The system stack is used by the compiler during initialization and then by ThreadX during initialization and subsequently in ISR processing.

## Dynamic Memory Usage

As mentioned before, dynamic memory usage is under direct control of the application. Control blocks and memory areas associated with stacks, queues, and memory pools can be placed anywhere in the target's memory space. This is an important feature because it facilitates easy utilization of different types of physical memory.

For example, suppose a target hardware environment has both fast memory and slow memory. If the application needs extra performance for a high-priority thread, its control block (TX\_THREAD) and stack can be placed in the fast memory area, which might greatly enhance its performance.

## Initialization

Understanding the initialization process is very important. The initial hardware environment is setup here. In addition, this is where the application is given its initial personality.

*i*

*ThreadX attempts to utilize (whenever possible) the complete development tool's initialization process. This makes it easier to upgrade to new versions of the development tools in the future.*



## System Reset

All microprocessors have reset logic. When a reset occurs (either hardware or software), the address of the application's entry point is retrieved from a specific memory location. After the entry point is retrieved, the processor transfers control to that location.

The application entry point is quite often written in the native assembly language and is usually supplied by the development tools (at least in template form). In some cases, a special version of the entry program is supplied with ThreadX.

## Development Tool Initialization

After the low-level initialization is complete, control transfers to the development tool's high-level initialization. This is usually the place where initialized global and static C variables are setup. Remember that their initial values are retrieved from the constant area. Exact initialization processing is development tool specific.

## main

When the development tool initialization is complete, control transfers to the user-supplied *main* function. At this point, the application controls what happens next. For most applications, the main function simply calls *tx\_kernel\_enter*, which is the entry into ThreadX. However, applications can perform preliminary processing (usually for hardware initialization) prior to entering ThreadX.

*i*

*The call to tx\_kernel\_enter does not return, so don't place any processing after it!*

## tx\_kernel\_enter

The entry function coordinates initialization of various internal ThreadX data structures and then calls the application's definition function *tx\_application\_define*.

When `tx_application_define` returns, control is transferred to the thread scheduling loop. This marks the end of initialization!

## Application Definition Function

The `tx_application_define` function defines all of the initial application threads, queues, semaphores, mutexes, event flags, memory pools, and timers. It is also possible to create and delete system resources from threads during the normal operation of the application. However, all initial application resources are defined here.

The `tx_application_define` function has a single input parameter and it is certainly worth mentioning. The *first-available* RAM address is the sole input parameter to this function. It is typically used as a starting point for initial run-time memory allocations of thread stacks, queues, and memory pools.

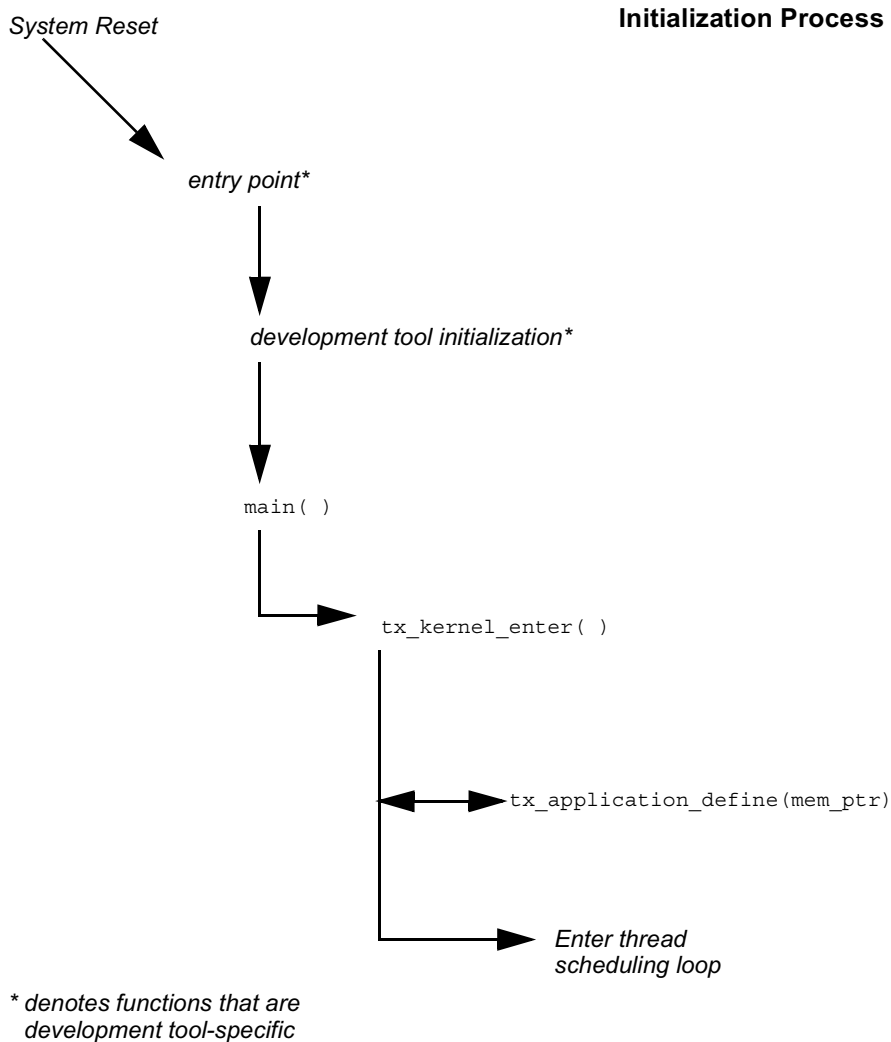
***i** After initialization is complete, only an executing thread can create and delete system resources—including other threads. Therefore, at least one thread must be created during initialization.*

## Interrupts

Interrupts are left disabled during the entire initialization process. If the application somehow enables interrupts, unpredictable behavior may occur. Figure 4 on page 51 shows the entire initialization process, from system reset through application-specific initialization.

## Thread Execution

Scheduling and executing application threads is the most important activity of ThreadX. What exactly is a thread? A thread is typically defined as semi-

**FIGURE 4. Initialization Process**

independent program segment with a dedicated purpose. The combined processing of all threads makes an application.

How are threads created? Threads are created dynamically by calling `tx_thread_create` during initialization or during thread execution. Threads are created in either a *ready* or *suspended* state.

## Thread Execution States

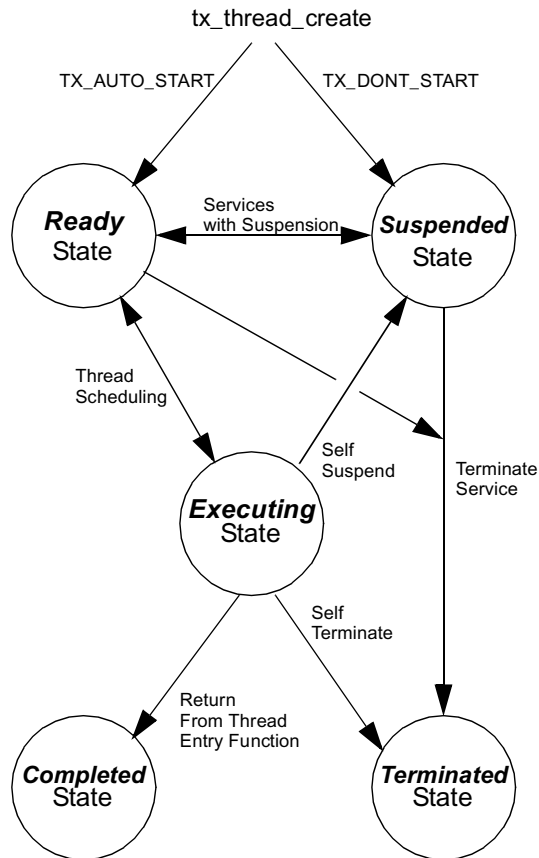
Understanding the different processing states of threads is a key ingredient to understanding the entire multi-threaded environment. In ThreadX there are five distinct thread states, namely *ready*, *suspended*, *executing*, *terminated*, and *completed*. Figure 5 on page 53 shows the thread state transition diagram for ThreadX.

A thread is in a *ready* state when it is ready for execution. A ready thread is not executed until it is the highest priority thread ready. When this happens, ThreadX executes the thread, which changes its state to *executing*.

If a higher-priority thread becomes ready, the executing thread reverts back to a *ready* state. The newly ready high-priority thread is then executed, which changes its logical state to *executing*. This transition between *ready* and *executing* states occurs every time thread preemption occurs.

It is important to point out that at any given moment only one thread is in an *executing* state. This is because a thread in the *executing* state actually has control of the underlying processor.

Threads that are in a *suspended* state are not eligible for execution. Reasons for being in a *suspended* state include suspension for time, queue messages, semaphores, mutexes, event flags, memory, and basic thread suspension. Once the cause for suspension is removed, the thread is placed back in a *ready* state.

**FIGURE 5. Thread State Transition**

A thread in a *completed* state indicates the thread completed its processing and returned from its entry function. Remember that the entry function is specified during thread creation. A thread in a *completed* state cannot execute again.

A thread is in a *terminated* state because another thread or itself called the *tx\_thread\_terminate*

service. A thread in a *terminated* state cannot execute again.

i

*If re-starting a completed or terminated thread is desired, the application must first delete the thread. It can then be re-created and re-started.*

## Thread Priorities

As mentioned before, a thread is defined as a semi-independent program segment with a dedicated purpose. However, all threads are not created equal! The dedicated purpose of some threads is much more important than others. This heterogeneous type of thread importance is a hallmark of embedded real-time applications.

How does ThreadX determine a thread's importance? When a thread is created, it is assigned a numerical value representing its importance or *priority*. Valid numerical priorities range between 0 and 31, where a value of 0 indicates the highest thread priority and a value of 31 represents the lowest thread priority.

Threads can have the same priority as others in the application. In addition, thread priorities can be changed during run-time.

## Thread Scheduling

ThreadX schedules threads based upon their priority. The ready thread with the highest priority is executed first. If multiple threads of the same priority are ready, they are executed in a *first-in-first-out* (FIFO) manner.

## Round-Robin Scheduling

*Round-robin* scheduling of multiple threads having the same priority is supported by ThreadX. This is accomplished through cooperative calls to *tx\_thread\_relinquish*. Calling this service gives all

other ready threads at the same priority a chance to execute before the *tx\_thread\_relinquish* caller executes again.

## Time-Slicing

*Time-slicing* provides another form of round-robin scheduling. In ThreadX, time-slicing is available on a per-thread basis. The thread's time-slice is assigned during creation and can be modified during run-time.

What exactly is a time-slice? A time-slice specifies the maximum number of timer ticks (timer interrupts) that a thread can execute without giving up the processor. When a time-slice expires, all other ready threads of the same priority level are given a chance to execute before the time-sliced thread executes again.

A fresh thread time-slice is given to a thread after it suspends, relinquishes, makes a ThreadX service call that causes preemption, or is itself time-sliced.

When a time-sliced thread is preempted, it will resume before other ready threads of equal priority for the remainder of its time-slice.

*i*

*Using time-slicing results in a slight amount of system overhead. Since time-slicing is only useful in cases where multiple threads share the same priority, threads having a unique priority should not be assigned a time-slice.*

## Preemption

Preemption is the process of temporarily interrupting an executing thread in favor of a higher-priority thread. This process is invisible to the executing thread. When the higher-priority thread is finished, control is transferred back to the exact place where the preemption took place.

This is a very important feature in real-time systems because it facilitates fast response to important application events. Although a very important feature, preemption can also be a source of a variety of problems, including starvation, excessive overhead, and priority inversion.



## Preemption-Threshold™

In order to ease some of the inherent problems of preemption, ThreadX provides a unique and advanced feature called *preemption-threshold*.

What is a preemption-threshold? A preemption-threshold allows a thread to specify a priority *ceiling* for disabling preemption. Threads that have higher priorities than the ceiling are still allowed to preempt, while those less than the ceiling are not allowed to preempt.

For example, suppose a thread of priority 20 only interacts with a group of threads that have priorities between 15 and 20. During its critical sections, the thread of priority 20 can set its preemption-threshold to 15, thereby preventing preemption from all of the threads that it interacts with. This still permits really important threads (priorities between 0 and 14) to preempt this thread during its critical section processing, which results in much more responsive processing.

Of course, it is still possible for a thread to disable all preemption by setting its preemption-threshold to 0. In addition, preemption-thresholds can be changed during run-time.



*i*

*Note that using preemption-threshold disables time-slicing for the specified thread.*



## Priority Inheritance

ThreadX also supports optional priority inheritance within its mutex services described later in this chapter. Priority inheritance allows a lower priority thread to temporarily assume the priority of a high priority thread that is waiting for a mutex owned by the lower priority thread. This capability helps the application to avoid un-deterministic priority inversion by eliminating preemption of intermediate thread priorities. Of course, *preemption-threshold* may be used to achieve a similar result.

## Thread Creation

Application threads are created during initialization or during the execution of other application threads. There are no limits on the number of threads that can be created by an application.

## Thread Control Block TX\_THREAD

The characteristics of each thread are contained in its control block. This structure is defined in the *tx\_api.h* file.

A thread's control block can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

Locating the control block in other areas requires a bit more care, just like all dynamically allocated memory. If a control block is allocated within a C function, the memory associated with it is part of the calling thread's stack. In general, using local storage for control blocks should be avoided because once the function returns, then all of its local variable stack space is released—regardless of whether another thread is using it for a control block!

In most cases, the application is oblivious to the contents of the thread's control block. However, there are some situations, especially in debug, where looking at certain members is quite useful. The

following are a few of the more useful control block members:

**tx\_run\_count** This member contains a counter of how many times the thread has been scheduled. An increasing counter indicates the thread is being scheduled and executed.

**tx\_state** This member contains the state of the associated thread. The following list represents the possible thread states:

TX_READY	(0x00)
TX_COMPLETED	(0x01)
TX_TERMINATED	(0x02)
TX_SUSPENDED	(0x03)
TX_SLEEP	(0x04)
TX_QUEUE_SUSP	(0x05)
TX_SEMAPHORE_SUSP	(0x06)
TX_EVENT_FLAG	(0x07)
TX_BLOCK_MEMORY	(0x08)
TX_BYTE_MEMORY	(0x09)
TX_MUTEX_SUSP	(0x0D)
TX_IO_DRIVER	(0x0A)

*i*

*Of course there are many other interesting fields in the thread control block, including the stack pointer, time-slice value, priorities, etc. The user is welcome to review any and all of the control block members, but modification is strictly prohibited!*

*i*

*There is no equate for the “executing” state mentioned earlier in this section. It is not necessary since there is only one executing thread at a given time. The state of an executing thread is also **TX\_READY**.*

## Currently Executing Thread

As mentioned before, there is only one thread executing at any given time. There are several ways to identify the executing thread, depending on who is making the request.

A program segment can get the control block address of the executing thread by calling **`tx_thread_identify`**. This is useful in shared portions of application code that are executed from multiple threads.

In debug sessions, users can examine the internal ThreadX pointer **`_tx_thread_current_ptr`**. It contains the control block address of the currently executing thread. If this pointer is NULL, no application thread is executing; i.e., ThreadX is waiting in its scheduling loop for a thread to become ready.

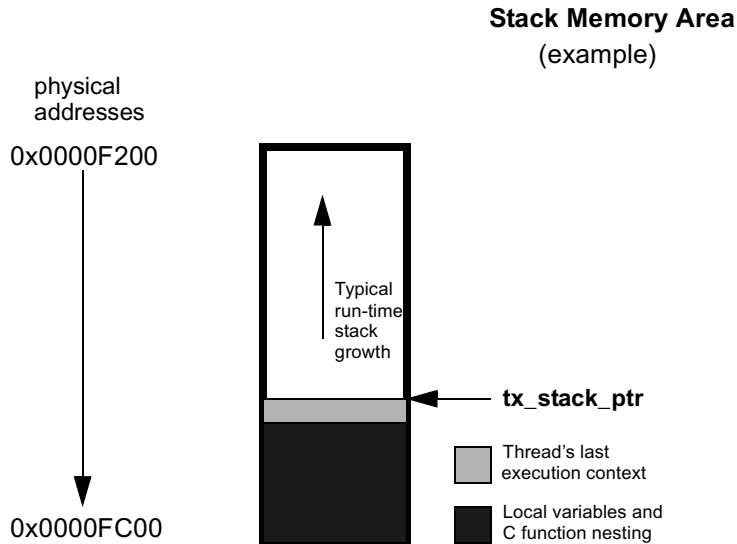
## Thread Stack Area

Each thread must have its own stack for saving the context of its last execution and compiler use. Most C compilers use the stack for making function calls and for temporarily allocating local variables. Figure 6 shows a typical thread's stack.

Where is a thread stack located? This is really up to the application. The stack area is specified during thread creation and can be located anywhere in the target's address space. This is a very important feature because it allows applications to improve performance of important threads by placing their stack in high-speed RAM.

How big should a stack be? This is one of the most frequently asked questions about threads. A thread's stack area must be large enough to accommodate worst-case function call nesting, local variable allocation, and saving its last execution context.

The minimum stack size, **`TX_MINIMUM_STACK`**, is defined by ThreadX. A stack of this size supports

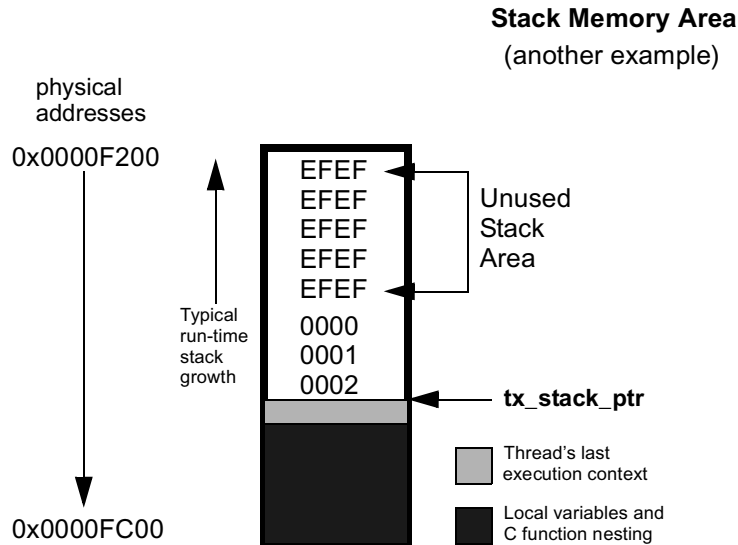
**FIGURE 6. Typical Thread Stack**

saving a thread's context and minimum amount of function calls and local variable allocation.

For most threads, the minimum stack size is simply too small. The user must come up with the worst-case size requirement by examining function-call nesting and local variable allocation. Of course, it is always better to error towards a larger stack area.

After the application is debugged, it is possible to go back and tune the thread stacks sizes if memory is scarce. A favorite trick is to preset all stack areas with an easily identifiable data pattern like `(0xEFEEF)` prior to creating the threads. After the application has been thoroughly put through its paces, the stack areas can be examined to see how much was actually used by finding the area of the stack where the preset pattern is still intact. Figure 7 on page 61

shows a stack preset to 0xEFEF after thorough thread execution.



**FIGURE 7. Stack Preset to 0xEFEF**

## Memory Pitfalls

The stack requirements for threads can be quite large. Therefore, it is important to design the application to have a reasonable number of threads. Furthermore, some care must be taken to avoid excessive stack usage within threads. Recursive algorithms and large local data structures should generally be avoided.

What happens when a stack area is too small? In most cases, the run-time environment simply assumes there is enough stack space. This causes thread execution to corrupt memory adjacent (usually before) its stack area. The results are very unpredictable, but most often result in an un-natural

change in the program counter. This is often called “jumping into the weeds.” Of course, the only way to prevent this is to ensure that all thread stacks are large enough.

## Reentrancy

One of the real beauties of multi-threading is that the same C function can be called from multiple threads. This provides great power and also helps reduce code space. However, it does require that C functions called from multiple threads are *reentrant*.

What does reentrant mean? Basically, a reentrant function stores the caller’s return address on the current stack and does not rely on global or static C variables that it previously setup. Most compilers place the return address on the stack. Hence, application developers must only worry about the use of *globals* and *statics*.

An example of a non-reentrant function is the string token function “strtok” found in the standard C library. This function remembers the previous string pointer on subsequent calls. It does this with a static string pointer. If this function is called from multiple threads, it would most likely return an invalid pointer.

## Thread Priority Pitfalls

Selecting thread priorities is one of the most important aspects of multi-threading. It is sometimes very tempting to assign priorities based on a perceived notion of thread importance rather than determining what is exactly required during run-time. Misuse of thread priorities can starve other threads, create priority inversion, reduce processing bandwidth, and make the application’s run-time behavior difficult to understand.

As mentioned before, ThreadX provides a priority-based, preemptive scheduling algorithm. Lower priority threads do not execute until there are no

higher-priority threads ready for execution. If a higher-priority thread is always ready, the lower-priority threads never execute. This condition is called *thread starvation*.

Most starvation problems are detected early in debug and can be solved by ensuring that higher priority threads don't execute continuously. Alternatively, logic can be added to the application that gradually raises the priority of starved threads until they get a chance to execute.

Another unpleasant pitfall associated with thread priorities is *priority inversion*. Priority inversion takes place when a higher-priority thread is suspended because a lower-priority thread has a needed resource. Of course, in some instances it is necessary for two threads of different priority to share a common resource. If these threads are the only ones active, the priority inversion time is bounded by the time the lower-priority thread holds the resource. This condition is both deterministic and quite normal. However, if threads of intermediate priority become active during this priority inversion condition, the priority inversion time is no longer deterministic and could cause an application failure.

There are principally three distinct methods of preventing un-deterministic priority inversion in ThreadX. First, the application priority selections and run-time behavior can be designed in a manner that prevents the priority inversion problem. Second, lower-priority threads can utilize *preemption-threshold* to block preemption from intermediate threads while they share resources with higher-priority threads. Finally, threads using ThreadX mutex objects to protect system resources may utilize the optional mutex *priority inheritance* to eliminate un-deterministic priority inversion.

## Priority Overhead

One of the most overlooked ways to reduce overhead in multi-threading is to reduce the number of context switches. As previously mentioned, a context switch occurs when execution of a higher-priority thread is favored over that of the executing thread. It is worthwhile to mention that higher-priority threads can become ready as a result of both external events (like interrupts) and from service calls made by the executing thread.

To illustrate the effects thread priorities have on context switch overhead, assume a three thread environment with threads named *thread\_1*, *thread\_2*, and *thread\_3*. Assume further that all of the threads are in a state of suspension waiting for a message. When *thread\_1* receives a message, it immediately forwards it to *thread\_2*. *Thread\_2* then forwards the message to *thread\_3*. *Thread\_3* just discards the message. After each thread processes its message, they go back and wait for another.

The processing required to execute these three threads varies greatly depending on their priorities. If all of the threads have the same priority, a single context switch occurs between their execution. The context switch occurs when each thread suspends on an empty message queue.

However, if *thread\_2* is higher-priority than *thread\_1* and *thread\_3* is higher-priority than *thread\_2*, the number of context switches doubles. This is because another context switch occurs inside of the *tx\_queue\_send* service when it detects that a higher-priority thread is now ready.

The ThreadX preemption-threshold mechanism can avoid these extra context switches and still allow the previously mentioned priority selections. This is a really important feature because it allows several thread priorities during scheduling, while at the same time eliminating some of the unwanted context switching between them during thread execution.



## Debugging Pitfalls

Debugging multi-threaded applications is a little more difficult because the same program code can be executed from multiple threads. In such cases, a break-point alone may not be enough. The debugger must also view the current thread pointer `_tx_thread_current_ptr` to see if the calling thread is the one to debug.

Much of this is being handled in multi-threading support packages offered through various development tool vendors. Because of its simple design, integrating ThreadX with different development tools is relatively easy.

Stack size is always an important debug topic in multi-threading. Whenever totally strange behavior is seen, it is usually a good first guess to increase stack sizes for all threads—especially the stack size of the last executing thread!

## Message Queues

Message queues are the primary means of inter-thread communication in ThreadX. One or more messages can reside in a message queue. A message queue that holds a single message is commonly called a *mailbox*.

Messages are copied to a queue by `tx_queue_send` and are copied from a queue by `tx_queue_receive`. The only exception to this is when a thread is suspended while waiting for a message on an empty queue. In this case, the next message sent to the queue is placed directly into the thread's destination area.

Each message queue is a public resource. ThreadX places no constraints on how message queues are used.

## Creating Message Queues

Message queues are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. There are no limits on the number of message queues in an application.

## Message Size

Each message queue supports a number of fixed-sized messages. The available message sizes are 1, 2, 4, 8, and 16 32-bit words. The message size is specified when the queue is created.

Application messages greater than 16 words must be passed by pointer. This is accomplished by creating a queue with a message size of 1 word (enough to hold a pointer) and then sending and receiving message pointers instead of the entire message.

## Message Queue Capacity

The number of messages a queue can hold is a function of its message size and the size of the memory area supplied during creation. The total message capacity of the queue is calculated by dividing the number of bytes in each message into the total number of bytes in the supplied memory area.

For example, if a message queue that supports a message size of 1 32-bit word (4 bytes) is created with a 100-byte memory area, its capacity is 25 messages.

## Queue Memory Area

As mentioned before, the memory area for buffering messages is specified during queue creation. Like other memory areas in ThreadX, it can be located anywhere in the target's address space.

This is an important feature because it gives the application considerable flexibility. For example, an application might locate the memory area of a very

important queue in high-speed RAM in order to improve performance.

## Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while attempting to send or receive a message from a queue. Typically, thread suspension involves waiting for a message from an empty queue. However, it is also possible for a thread to suspend trying to send a message to a full queue.

After the condition for suspension is resolved, the service requested is completed and the waiting thread is resumed. If multiple threads are suspended on the same queue, they are resumed in the order they were suspended (FIFO).

However, priority resumption is also possible if the application calls ***tx\_queue\_prioritize*** prior to the queue service that lifts thread suspension. The queue prioritize service places the highest priority thread at the front of the suspension list, while leaving all other suspended threads in the same FIFO order.

Time-outs are also available for all queue suspensions. Basically, a time-out specifies the maximum number of timer ticks the thread will stay suspended. If a time-out occurs, the thread is resumed and the service returns with the appropriate error code.

## Queue Control Block TX\_QUEUE

The characteristics of each message queue are found in its control block. It contains interesting information such as the number of messages in the queue. This structure is defined in the ***tx\_api.h*** file.

Message queue control blocks can also be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make

the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

## Message Destination Pitfall

As mentioned previously, messages are copied between the queue area and application data areas. It is very important to insure that the destination for a received message is large enough to hold the entire message. If not, the memory following the message destination will likely be corrupted.



*This is especially lethal when a too-small message destination is on the stack—nothing like corrupting the return address of a function!*

## Counting Semaphores

ThreadX provides 32-bit counting semaphores that range in value between 0 and 4,294,967,295. There are two operations for counting semaphores: *tx\_semaphore\_get* and *tx\_semaphore\_put*. The get operation decreases the semaphore by one. If the semaphore is 0, the get operation is not successful. The inverse of the get operation is the put operation. It increases the semaphore by one.

Each counting semaphore is a public resource. ThreadX places no constraints on how counting semaphores are used.

Counting semaphores are typically used for *mutual exclusion*. However, counting semaphores can also be used as a method for event notification.

## Mutual Exclusion

Mutual exclusion pertains to controlling the access of threads to certain application areas (also called *critical sections* or *application resources*). When used for mutual exclusion, the “current count” of a

semaphore represents the total number of threads that are allowed access. In most cases, counting semaphores used for mutual exclusion will have an initial value of 1, meaning that only one thread can access the associated resource at a time. Counting semaphores that only have values of 0 or 1 are commonly called *binary semaphores*.

i

*If a binary semaphore is being used, the user must prevent the same thread from performing a get operation on a semaphore it already owns. A second get would be unsuccessful and could cause indefinite suspension of the calling thread and permanent unavailability of the resource.*

## Event Notification

It is also possible to use counting semaphores as event notification, in a producer-consumer fashion. The consumer attempts to get the counting semaphore while the producer increases the semaphore whenever something is available. Such semaphores usually have an initial value of 0 and won't increase until the producer has something ready for the consumer.

## Creating Counting Semaphores

Counting semaphores are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. The initial count of the semaphore is specified during creation. There are no limits on the number of counting semaphores in an application.

## Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while attempting to perform a get operation on a semaphore with a current count of 0.

Once a put operation is performed, the suspended thread's get operation is performed and the thread is resumed. If multiple threads are suspended on the

same counting semaphore, they are resumed in the same order they were suspended (FIFO).

However, priority resumption is also possible if the application calls **`tx_semaphore_prioritize`** prior to the semaphore put call that lifts thread suspension. The semaphore prioritize service places the highest priority thread at the front of the suspension list, while leaving all other suspended threads in the same FIFO order.

## Semaphore Control Block **TX\_SEMAPHORE**

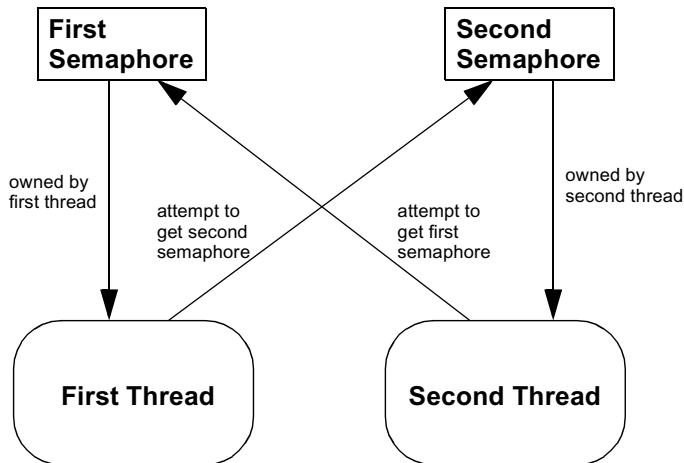
The characteristics of each counting semaphore are found in its control block. It contains interesting information such as the current semaphore count. This structure is defined in the **`tx_api.h`** file.

Semaphore control blocks can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

## Deadly Embrace

One of the most interesting and dangerous pitfalls associated with semaphores used for mutual exclusion is the *deadly embrace*. A deadly embrace, or *deadlock*, is a condition where two or more threads are suspended indefinitely while attempting to get semaphores already owned by other threads.

This condition is best illustrated by a two thread, two semaphore example. Suppose the first thread owns the first semaphore and the second thread owns the second semaphore. If the first thread attempts to get the second semaphore and at the same time the second thread attempts to get the first semaphore, both threads enter a deadlock condition. In addition, if these threads stay suspended forever, their associated resources are locked-out forever as well. Figure 8 on page 71 illustrates this example.

**Deadly Embrace**  
(example)**FIGURE 8. Example of Suspended Threads**

How are deadly embraces avoided? Prevention in the application is the best method for real-time systems. This amounts to placing certain restrictions on how threads obtain semaphores. Deadly embraces are avoided if threads can only have one semaphore at a time. Alternatively, threads can own multiple semaphores if they all gather them in the same order. In the previous example, if the first and second thread obtain the first and second semaphore in order, the deadly embrace is prevented.



*It is also possible to use the suspension time-out associated with the get operation to recover from a deadly embrace.*

## Priority Inversion

Another pitfall associated with mutual exclusion semaphores is priority inversion. This topic is discussed more fully in “Thread Priority Pitfalls” on page 62.

The basic problem results from a situation where a lower-priority thread has a semaphore that a higher-priority thread needs. This in itself is normal. However, threads with priorities in between them may cause the priority inversion to last a non-deterministic amount of time. This can be handled through careful selection of thread priorities, using preemption- thresholds, and temporarily raising the priority of the thread that owns the resource to that of the high-priority thread.

## Mutexes

In addition to semaphores, ThreadX also provides a mutex object. A mutex is basically a binary semaphore, which means that only one thread can own a mutex at a time. In addition, the same thread may perform a successful mutex get operation on an owned mutex multiple times, 4,294,967,295 to be exact. There are two operations on the mutex object, namely ***tx\_mutex\_get*** and ***tx\_mutex\_put***. The get operation obtains a mutex not owned by another thread, while the put operation releases a previously obtained mutex. In order for a thread to release a mutex, the number of put operations must equal the number of prior get operations.

Each mutex is a public resource. ThreadX places no constraints on how mutexes are used.

ThreadX mutexes are used solely for *mutual exclusion*. Unlike counting semaphores, mutexes have no use as a method for event notification.



## Mutex Mutual Exclusion

Similar to the discussion in the counting semaphore section, mutual exclusion pertains to controlling the access of threads to certain application areas (also called *critical sections* or *application resources*). When available, a ThreadX mutex will have an ownership count of 0. Once the mutex is obtained by a thread, the ownership count is incremented once for every get operation performed on the mutex and decremented for every put operation.

## Creating Mutexes

ThreadX mutexes are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. The initial condition of a mutex is always “available.” Mutex creation is also where the determination is made as to whether or not the mutex implements *priority inheritance*.

## Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while attempting to perform a get operation on a mutex already owned by another thread.

Once the same number of put operations are performed by the owning thread, the suspended thread’s get operation is performed, giving it ownership of the mutex, and the thread is resumed. If multiple threads are suspended on the same mutex, they are resumed in the same order they were suspended (FIFO).

However, priority resumption is done automatically if the mutex priority inheritance was selected during creation. In addition, priority resumption is also possible if the application calls ***tx\_mutex\_prioritize*** prior to the mutex put call that lifts thread suspension. The mutex prioritize service places the highest priority thread at the front of the suspension list, while leaving all other suspended threads in the same FIFO order.

## Mutex Control Block TX\_MUTEX

The characteristics of each mutex are found in its control block. It contains interesting information such as the current mutex ownership count along with the pointer of the thread that owns the mutex. This structure is defined in the **tx\_api.h** file.

Mutex control blocks can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

## Deadly Embrace

One of the most interesting and dangerous pitfalls associated with mutex ownership is the *deadly embrace*. A deadly embrace, or *deadlock*, is a condition where two or more threads are suspended indefinitely while attempting to get a mutex already owned by the other threads. The discussion of *deadly embrace* and its remedies found in the previous semaphore discussion is completely valid for the mutex object as well.

## Priority Inversion

As mentioned previously, a major pitfall associated with mutual exclusion is priority inversion. This topic is discussed more fully in “Thread Priority Pitfalls” on page 62.

The basic problem results from a situation where a lower-priority thread has a semaphore that a higher-priority thread needs. This in itself is normal. However, threads with priorities in between them may cause the priority inversion to last a non-deterministic amount of time. Unlike semaphores discussed previously, the ThreadX mutex object has optional *priority inheritance*. The basic idea behind priority inheritance is that a lower priority thread has its priority raised temporarily to the priority of a high priority thread that wants the same mutex owned by the lower priority thread. When the lower priority thread releases the mutex, its original priority is then

restored and the higher priority thread is given ownership of the mutex. This feature eliminates undeterministic priority inversion by bounding the amount of inversion to the time the lower priority thread holds the mutex. Of course, the techniques discussed earlier in this chapter to handle undeterministic priority inversion are also valid with mutexes as well.

## Event Flags

Event flags provide a powerful tool for thread synchronization. Each event flag is represented by a single bit. Event flags are arranged in groups of 32.

Threads can operate on all 32 event flags in a group at the same time. Events are set by `tx_event_flags_set` and are retrieved by `tx_event_flags_get`.

Setting event flags is done with a logical AND/OR operation between the current event flags and the new event flags. The type of logical operation (either an AND or OR) is specified in the `tx_event_flags_set` call.

There are similar logical options for retrieval of event flags. A get request can specify that all specified event flags are required (a logical AND). Alternatively, a get request can specify that any of the specified event flags will satisfy the request (a logical OR). The type of logical operation associated with event flag retrieval is specified in the `tx_event_flags_get` call.

**i**

*Event flags that satisfy a get request are consumed, i.e. set to zero, if **TX\_OR\_CLEAR** or **TX\_AND\_CLEAR** are specified by the request.*

Each event flag group is a public resource. ThreadX places no constraints on how event flag groups are used.

## Creating Event Flag Groups

Event flag groups are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. At time of their creation, all event flags in the group are set to zero. There are no limits on the number of event flag groups in an application.

## Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while attempting to get any logical combination of event flags from a group. Once an event flag is set, the get requests of all suspended threads are reviewed. All the threads that now have the required event flags are resumed.

*i*

*It is important to emphasize that all suspended threads on an event flag group are reviewed when its event flags are set. This, of course, introduces additional overhead. Therefore, it is generally good practice to limit the number of threads using the same event flag group to a reasonable number.*

## Event Flag Group Control Block

TX\_EVENT\_FLAGS\_GROUP

The characteristics of each event flag group are found in its control block. It contains information such as the current event flag settings and the number of threads suspended for events. This structure is defined in the **tx\_api.h** file.

Event group control blocks can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

# Memory Block Pools

Allocating memory in a fast and deterministic manner is always a challenge in real-time applications. With this in mind, ThreadX provides the ability to create and manage multiple pools of fixed-size memory blocks.

Since memory block pools consist of fixed-size blocks, there are never any fragmentation problems. Of course, fragmentation causes behavior that is inherently un-deterministic. In addition, the time required to allocate and free a fixed-size memory is comparable to that of simple linked-list manipulation. Furthermore, memory block allocation and de-allocation is done at the head of the available list. This provides the fastest possible linked list processing and might help keep the actual memory block in cache.

Lack of flexibility is the main drawback of fixed-size memory pools. The block size of a pool must be large enough to handle the worst case memory requirements of its users. Of course, memory may be wasted if many different size memory requests are made to the same pool. A possible solution is to make several different memory block pools that contain different sized memory blocks.

Each memory block pool is a public resource. ThreadX places no constraints on how pools are used.

## Creating Memory Block Pools

Memory block pools are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. There are no limits on the number of memory block pools in an application.

## Memory Block Size

As mentioned earlier, memory block pools contain a number of fixed-size blocks. The block size, in bytes, is specified during creation of the pool.

*i*

*ThreadX adds a small amount of overhead—the size of a C pointer—to each memory block in the pool. In addition, ThreadX might have to pad the block size in order to keep the beginning of each memory block on proper alignment.*

## Pool Capacity

The number of memory blocks in a pool is a function of the block size and the total number of bytes in the memory area supplied during creation. The capacity of a pool is calculated by dividing the block size (including padding and the pointer overhead bytes) into the total number of bytes in the supplied memory area.

## Pool's Memory Area

As mentioned before, the memory area for the block pool is specified during creation. Like other memory areas in ThreadX, it can be located anywhere in the target's address space.

This is an important feature because of the considerable flexibility it gives the application. For example, suppose that a communication product has a high-speed memory area for I/O. This memory area is easily managed by making it into a ThreadX memory block pool.

## Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while waiting for a memory block from an empty pool. When a block is returned to the pool, the suspended thread is given this block and resumed.

If multiple threads are suspended on the same memory block pool, they are resumed in the order they were suspended (FIFO).

However, priority resumption is also possible if the application calls ***tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize*** prior to the block release call that lifts thread suspension. The block pool prioritize service places the highest priority thread at the front of the suspension list, while leaving all other suspended threads in the same FIFO order.

### **Memory Block Pool Control Block TX\_BLOCK\_POOL**

The characteristics of each memory block pool are found in its control block. It contains information such as the number of memory blocks left and their size. This structure is defined in the ***tx\_api.h*** file.

Pool control blocks can also be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

### **Overwriting Memory Blocks**

It is very important to ensure that the user of an allocated memory block does not write outside its boundaries. If this happens, corruption occurs in an adjacent (usually subsequent) memory area. The results are unpredictable and quite often fatal!

## **Memory Byte Pools**

ThreadX memory byte pools are similar to a standard C heap. Unlike the standard C heap, it is possible to have multiple memory byte pools. In addition, threads can suspend on a pool until the requested memory is available.

Allocations from memory byte pools are similar to traditional *malloc* calls, which include the amount of memory desired (in bytes). Memory is allocated from the pool in a *first-fit* manner, i.e., the first free memory block that satisfies the request is used. Excess memory from this block is converted into a new block and placed back in the free memory list. This process is called *fragmentation*.

Adjacent free memory blocks are *merged* together during a subsequent allocation search for a large enough free memory block. This process is called *de-fragmentation*.

Each memory byte pool is a public resource. ThreadX places no constraints on how pools are used, except that memory byte services can not be called from ISRs.

## Creating Memory Byte Pools

Memory byte pools are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. There are no limits on the number of memory byte pools in an application.

## Pool Capacity

The number of allocatable bytes in a memory byte pool is slightly less than what was specified during creation. This is because management of the free memory area introduces some overhead. Each free memory block in the pool requires the equivalent of two C pointers of overhead. In addition, the pool is created with two blocks, a large free block and a small permanently allocated block at the end of the memory area. This allocated block is used to improve performance of the allocation algorithm. It eliminates the need to continuously check for the end of the pool area during merging.

During run-time, the amount of overhead in the pool typically increases. Allocations of an odd number of



bytes are padded to insure proper alignment of the next memory block. In addition, overhead increases as the pool becomes more fragmented.

## Pool's Memory Area

The memory area for a memory byte pool is specified during creation. Like other memory areas in ThreadX, it can be located anywhere in the target's address space.

This is an important feature because of the considerable flexibility it gives the application. For example, if the target hardware has a high-speed memory area and a low-speed memory area, the user can manage memory allocation for both areas by creating a pool in each of them.

## Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while waiting for memory bytes from a pool. When sufficient contiguous memory becomes available, the suspended threads are given their requested memory and resumed.

If multiple threads are suspended on the same memory byte pool, they are given memory (resumed) in the order they were suspended (FIFO).

However, priority resumption is also possible if the application calls ***tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize*** prior to the byte release call that lifts thread suspension. The byte pool prioritize service places the highest priority thread at the front of the suspension list, while leaving all other suspended threads in the same FIFO order.

## Memory Byte Pool Control Block TX\_BYTE\_POOL

The characteristics of each memory byte pool are found in its control block. It contains useful information such as the number of available bytes in the pool. This structure is defined in the **tx\_api.h** file.

Pool control blocks can also be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

## Un-deterministic Behavior

Although memory byte pools provide the most flexible memory allocation, they also suffer from somewhat un-deterministic behavior. For example, a memory byte pool may have 2,000 bytes of memory available but may not be able to satisfy an allocation request of 1,000 bytes. This is because there are no guarantees on how many of the free bytes are contiguous. Even if a 1,000 byte free block exists, there are no guarantees on how long it might take to find the block. It is completely possible that the entire memory pool would need to be searched in order to find the 1,000 byte block.

*i*

*Because of this, it is generally good practice to avoid using memory byte services in areas where deterministic, real-time behavior is required. Many applications pre-allocate their required memory during initialization or run-time configuration.*

## Overwriting Memory Blocks

It is very important to insure that the user of allocated memory does not write outside its boundaries. If this happens, corruption occurs in an adjacent (usually subsequent) memory area. The results are unpredictable and quite often fatal!

# Application Timers

Fast response to asynchronous external events is the most important function of real-time, embedded applications. However, many of these applications must also perform certain activities at pre-determined intervals of time.

ThreadX application timers provide applications with the ability to execute application C functions at specific intervals of time. It is also possible for an application timer to expire only once. This type of timer is called a *one-shot timer*, while repeating interval timers are called *periodic timers*.

Each application timer is a public resource. ThreadX places no constraints on how application timers are used.

## Timer Intervals

In ThreadX time intervals are measured by periodic timer interrupts. Each timer interrupt is called a timer *tick*. The actual time between timer ticks is specified by the application, but 10ms is the norm for most implementations. The periodic timer setup is typically found in the **tx\_ill** assembly file.

It is worth mentioning that the underlying hardware must have the ability to generate periodic interrupts in order for application timers to function. In some cases, the processor has a built-in periodic interrupt capability. If the processor doesn't have this ability, the user's board must have a peripheral device that can generate periodic interrupts.

**i** ThreadX can still function even without a periodic interrupt source. However, all timer-related processing is then disabled. This includes time-slicing, suspension time-outs, and timer services.

## Timer Accuracy

Timer expirations are specified in terms of ticks. The specified expiration value is decreased by one on each timer tick. Since an application timer could be enabled just prior to a timer interrupt (or timer tick), the actual expiration time could be up to one tick early.

If the timer tick rate is 10ms, application timers may expire up to 10ms early. This is more significant for 10ms timers than 1 second timers. Of course, increasing the timer interrupt frequency decreases this margin of error.

## Timer Execution

Application timers execute in the order they become active. For example, if three timers are created with the same expiration value and activated, their corresponding expiration functions are guaranteed to execute in order they were activated.

## Creating Application Timers

Application timers are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. There are no limits on the number of application timers in an application.

## Application Timer Control Block `TX_TIMER`

The characteristics of each application timer are found in its control block. It contains useful information such as the 32-bit expiration identification value. This structure is defined in the *tx\_api.h* file.

Application timer control blocks can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

## Excessive Timers

By default, application timers execute from within a hidden system thread that runs at priority zero, which is higher than any application thread. Because of this, processing inside application timers should be kept to a minimum.

It is also important to avoid, whenever possible, timers that expire every timer tick. Such a situation might induce excessive overhead in the application.



*As mentioned previously, application timers are executed from a hidden system thread. It is, therefore, very important not to select suspension on any ThreadX service calls made from within the application timer's expiration function.*

## Relative Time

In addition to the application timers mentioned previously, ThreadX provides a single continuously incrementing 32-bit tick counter. The tick counter or *time* is increased by one on each timer interrupt.

The application can read or set this 32-bit counter through calls to `tx_time_get` and `tx_time_set`, respectively. The use of this tick counter is determined completely by the application. It is not used internally by ThreadX.

## Interrupts

Fast response to asynchronous events is the principal function of real-time, embedded applications. How does the application know such an event is present? Typically, this is accomplished through hardware interrupts.

An interrupt is an asynchronous change in processor execution. Typically, when an interrupt occurs, the processor saves a small portion of the current execution on the stack and transfers control to the appropriate interrupt vector. The interrupt vector is basically just the address of the routine responsible for handling the specific type interrupt. The exact interrupt handling procedure is processor specific.

## Interrupt Control

The *tx\_interrupt\_control* service allows applications to enable and disable interrupts. The previous interrupt enable/disable posture is returned by this service. It is important to mention that interrupt control only affects the currently executing program segment. For example, if a thread disables interrupts, they only remain disabled during execution of that thread.



*A Non-Maskable Interrupt (NMI) is defined as an interrupt that the cannot be disabled by the hardware. Such an interrupt may be used by ThreadX applications. However, the application's NMI handling routine is not allowed to use ThreadX context management or any API services.*

## ThreadX Managed Interrupts

ThreadX provides applications with complete interrupt management. This management includes saving and restoring the context of the interrupted execution. In addition, ThreadX allows certain services to be called from within Interrupt Service Routines (ISRs). The following is a list of ThreadX services allowed from application ISRs:

```
tx_block_allocate
tx_block_pool_info_get
tx_block_pool_prioritize
tx_block_release
tx_byte_pool_info_get
tx_byte_pool_prioritize
tx_event_flags_info_get
tx_event_flags_get
```

```
tx_event_flags_set
tx_interrupt_control
tx_queue_front_send
tx_queue_info_get
tx_queue_prioritize
tx_queue_receive
tx_queue_send
tx_semaphore_get
tx_semaphore_info_get
tx_semaphore_prioritize
tx_semaphore_put
tx_thread_identify
tx_thread_info_get
tx_thread_resume
tx_thread_wait_abort
tx_time_get
tx_time_set
tx_timer_activate
tx_timer_change
tx_timer_deactivate
tx_timer_info_get
```



*Suspension is not allowed from ISRs. Therefore, special care must be made not to specify suspension in service calls made from ISRs.*

## ISR Template

In order to manage application interrupts, several ThreadX utilities must be called in the beginning and end of application ISRs. The exact format for interrupt handling varies between ports. Please review the ***readme.txt*** file on the distribution disk for specific instructions on managing ISRs.

The following small code segment is typical of most ThreadX managed ISRs. In most cases, this processing is in assembly language.

```

__application_ISR_entry:
; Save context and prepare for
; ThreadX use by calling the ISR
; entry function.
CALL __tx_thread_context_save

; The ISR can now call ThreadX
; services and its own C functions

; When the ISR is finished, context
; is restored (or thread preemption)
; by calling the context restore
; function. Control does not return!
JUMP __tx_thread_context_restore

```

## High-Frequency Interrupts

Some interrupts occur at such a high-frequency that saving and restoring full context upon each interrupt would consume excessive processing bandwidth. In such cases, it is common for the application to have a small assembly language ISR that does a limited amount of processing for a majority of these high-frequency interrupts.

After a certain point in time, the small ISR may need to interact with ThreadX. This is accomplished by simply calling the entry and exit functions described in the above template.

## Interrupt Latency

ThreadX locks out interrupts over brief periods of time. The maximum amount of time interrupts are disabled is on the order of the time required to save or restore a thread's context.



# *Description of ThreadX Services*

---

This chapter contains a description of all ThreadX services (listed below) in alphabetic order. Their names are designed so that you will find all similar services grouped together. For example, all memory block services are found at the beginning of this chapter.

In the “Return Values” section in the following API descriptions, values in **BOLD** are not affected by the **TX\_DISABLE\_ERROR\_CHECKING** define that is used to disable API error checking; while non-bold values are completely disabled.

tx\_block\_allocate

*Allocate a fixed-size block of memory 94*

tx\_block\_pool\_create

*Create a pool of fixed-size memory blocks 96*

tx\_block\_pool\_delete

*Delete fixed-size block of memory pool 98*

tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get

*Retrieve information about block pool 100*

tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize

*Prioritize block pool suspension list 102*

tx\_block\_release

*Release a fixed-size block of memory 104*

tx\_byte\_allocate

*Allocate bytes of memory 106*

tx\_byte\_pool\_create  
*Create a memory pool of bytes 110*

tx\_byte\_pool\_delete  
*Delete a memory pool of bytes 112*

tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get  
*Retrieve information about byte pool 114*

tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize  
*Prioritize the byte pool suspension list 116*

tx\_byte\_release  
*Release bytes back to memory pool 118*

tx\_event\_flags\_create  
*Create an event flag group 120*

tx\_event\_flags\_delete  
*Delete an event flag group 122*

tx\_event\_flags\_get  
*Get event flags from event flag group 124*

tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get  
*Retrieve information about event flags group 128*

tx\_event\_flags\_set  
*Set event flags in an event flag group 130*

tx\_interrupt\_control  
*Enables and disables interrupts 132*

tx\_mutex\_create  
*Create a mutual exclusion mutex 134*

tx\_mutex\_delete  
*Delete a mutual exclusion mutex 136*

tx\_mutex\_get  
*Obtain ownership of a mutex 138*

tx\_mutex\_info\_get  
*Retrieve information about a mutex 140*

tx\_mutex\_prioritize  
*Prioritize mutex suspension list 142*

tx\_mutex\_put  
*Release ownership of mutex 144*

tx\_queue\_create  
*Create a message queue 146*

tx\_queue\_delete  
*Delete a message queue 148*

tx\_queue\_flush  
*Empty messages in a message queue 150*

tx\_queue\_front\_send  
*Send a message to the front of queue 152*

tx\_queue\_info\_get  
*Retrieve information about a queue 154*

tx\_queue\_prioritize  
*Prioritize queue suspension list 156*

tx\_queue\_receive  
*Get a message from message queue 158*

tx\_queue\_send  
*Send a message to message queue 162*

tx\_semaphore\_create  
*Create a counting semaphore 164*

tx\_semaphore\_delete  
*Delete a counting semaphore 166*

tx\_semaphore\_get  
*Get instance from counting semaphore 168*

tx\_semaphore\_info\_get  
*Retrieve information about a semaphore 170*

tx\_semaphore\_prioritize  
*Prioritize semaphore suspension list 172*

tx\_semaphore\_put  
*Place an instance in counting semaphore 174*

tx\_thread\_create  
*Create an application thread 176*

- tx\_thread\_delete  
*Delete an application thread 180*
- tx\_thread\_identify  
*Retrieves pointer to executing thread 182*
- tx\_thread\_info\_get  
*Retrieve information about a thread 184*
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change  
*Change preemption-threshold of application thread 188*
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change  
*Change priority of an application thread 190*
- tx\_thread\_relinquish  
*Relinquish control to other application threads 192*
- tx\_thread\_resume  
*Resume suspended application thread 194*
- tx\_thread\_sleep  
*Suspended current thread for specified time 196*
- tx\_thread\_suspend  
*Suspend an application thread 198*
- tx\_thread\_terminate  
*Terminates an application thread 200*
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change  
*Changes time-slice of application thread 202*
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort  
*Abort suspension of specified thread 204*
- tx\_time\_get  
*Retrieves the current time 206*
- tx\_time\_set  
*Sets the current time 208*
- tx\_timer\_activate  
*Activate an application timer 210*
- tx\_timer\_change  
*Change an application timer 212*

tx\_timer\_create

*Create an application timer 214*

tx\_timer\_deactivate

*Deactivate an application timer 216*

tx\_timer\_delete

*Delete an application timer 218*

tx\_timer\_info\_get

*Retrieve information about application timer 220*

# tx\_block\_allocate

Allocate a fixed-size block of memory

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_allocate(TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr, VOID **block_ptr,
                      ULONG wait_option)
```

## Description

This service allocates a fixed-size memory block from the specified memory pool. The actual size of the memory block is determined during memory pool creation.

## Input Parameters

pool_ptr	Pointer to a previously created memory block pool.
block_ptr	Pointer to a destination block pointer. On successful allocation, the address of the allocated memory block is placed where this parameter points to.
wait_option	Defines how the service behaves if there are no memory blocks available. The wait options are defined as follows:

TX_NO_WAIT	(0x00000000)
TX_WAIT_FOREVER	(0xFFFFFFFF)
timeout value	(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFF)

Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., Initialization, timer, or ISR.*

Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until a memory block is available.

Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFF) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for a memory block.

## Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful memory block allocation.
<b>TX_DELETED</b>	(0x01)	Memory block pool was deleted while thread was suspended.
<b>TX_NO_MEMORY</b>	(0x10)	Service was unable to allocate a block of memory.
<b>TX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer or ISR.
<b>TX_POOL_ERROR</b>	(0x02)	Invalid memory block pool pointer.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid pointer to destination pointer.
<b>TX_WAIT_ERROR</b>	(0x04)	A wait option other than TX_NO_WAIT was specified on a call from a non-thread.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL my_pool;
unsigned char *memory_ptr;
UINT status;

/* Allocate a memory block from my_pool. Assume that the
   pool has already been created with a call to
   tx_block_pool_create. */
status = tx_block_allocate(&my_pool, (VOID **) &memory_ptr,
                          TX_NO_WAIT);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, memory_ptr contains the
   address of the allocated block of memory. */
```

## See Also

tx\_block\_pool\_create, tx\_block\_pool\_delete, tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get,  
tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize, tx\_block\_release

## tx\_block\_pool\_create

---

Create a pool of fixed-size memory blocks

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_pool_create(TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr,
                          CHAR *name_ptr, ULONG block_size,
                          VOID *pool_start, ULONG pool_size)
```

### Description

This service creates a pool of fixed-size memory blocks. The memory area specified is divided into as many fixed-size memory blocks as possible using the formula:

$$\text{total blocks} = (\text{total bytes}) / (\text{block size} + \text{sizeof(void *)})$$

*i*

Each memory block contains one pointer of overhead that is invisible to the user and is represented by the “sizeof(void \*)” in the preceding formula.

### Input Parameters

<b>pool_ptr</b>	Pointer to a memory block pool control block.
<b>name_ptr</b>	Pointer to the name of the memory block pool.
<b>block_size</b>	Number of bytes in each memory block.
<b>pool_start</b>	Starting address of the memory block pool.
<b>pool_size</b>	Total number of bytes available for the memory block pool.



## Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful memory block pool creation.
<b>TX_POOL_ERROR</b>	(0x02)	Invalid memory block pool pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the pool is already created.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid starting address of the pool.
<b>TX_SIZE_ERROR</b>	(0x05)	Size of pool is invalid.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization and threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL my_pool;
UINT status;

/* Create a memory pool whose total size is 1000 bytes
   starting at address 0x100000. Each block in this
   pool is defined to be 50 bytes long. */
status = tx_block_pool_create(&my_pool, "my_pool_name",
                             50, (VOID *) 0x100000, 1000);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_pool contains 18
   memory blocks of 50 bytes each. The reason
   there are not 20 blocks in the pool is
   because of the one overhead pointer associated with each
   block. */
```

## See Also

tx\_block\_allocate, tx\_block\_pool\_delete, tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get,  
tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize, tx\_block\_release

## tx\_block\_pool\_delete

---

Delete fixed-size block of memory pool

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_pool_delete(TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr)
```

### Description

This service deletes the specified block-memory pool. All threads suspended waiting for a memory block from this pool are resumed and given a TX\_DELETED return status.

***i** It is the application's responsibility to manage the memory area associated with the pool, which is available after this service completes. In addition, the application must prevent use of a deleted pool or its former memory blocks.*

### Input Parameters

<b>pool_ptr</b>	Pointer to a previously created memory block pool.
-----------------	--

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful memory block pool deletion.
<b>TX_POOL_ERROR</b>	(0x02)	Invalid memory block pool pointer.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL my_pool;
UINT status;

/* Delete entire memory block pool. Assume that the pool
   has already been created with a call to
   tx_block_pool_create. */
status = tx_block_pool_delete(&my_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the memory block pool is
   deleted. */
```

## See Also

tx\_block\_allocate, tx\_block\_pool\_create, tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get,  
tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize, tx\_block\_release

## tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get

---

Retrieve information about block pool

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_pool_info_get(TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr, CHAR **name,
                           ULONG *available, ULONG *total_blocks,
                           TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
                           ULONG *suspended_count,
                           TX_BLOCK_POOL **next_pool)
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about the specified block memory pool.

### Input Parameters

<b>pool_ptr</b>	Pointer to previously created memory block pool.
<b>name</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer to the block pool's name.
<b>available</b>	Pointer to destination for the number of available blocks in the block pool.
<b>total_blocks</b>	Pointer to destination for the total number of blocks in the block pool.
<b>first_suspended</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this block pool.
<b>suspended_count</b>	Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this block pool.
<b>next_pool</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created block pool.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful block pool information retrieve.
<b>TX_POOL_ERROR</b>	(0x02)	Invalid memory block pool pointer.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid pointer (NULL) for any destination pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL my_pool;
CHAR *name;
ULONG available;
ULONG total_blocks;
TX_THREAD *first_suspended;
ULONG suspended_count;
TX_BLOCK_POOL *next_pool;
UINT status;

/* Retrieve information about a the previously created
   block pool "my_pool." */
status = tx_block_pool_info_get(&my_pool, &name,
                                &available,&total_packets,
                                &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
                                &next_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
   valid. */
```

## See Also

tx\_block\_pool\_allocate, tx\_block\_pool\_create, tx\_block\_pool\_delete,  
tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize, tx\_block\_release

## tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize

---

Prioritize block pool suspension list

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_pool_prioritize(TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr)
```

### Description

This service places the highest priority thread suspended for a block of memory on this pool at the front of the suspension list. All other threads remain in the same FIFO order they were suspended in.

### Input Parameters

<b>pool_ptr</b>	Pointer to a memory block pool control block.
-----------------	---

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful block pool prioritize.
<b>TX_POOL_ERROR</b>	(0x02)	Invalid memory block pool pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL my_pool;
UINT status;

/* Ensure that the highest priority thread will receive
the next free block in this pool. */
status = tx_block_pool_prioritize(&my_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the highest priority
suspended thread is at the front of the list. The
next tx_block_release call will wake up this thread. */
```

## See Also

tx\_block\_allocate, tx\_block\_pool\_create, tx\_block\_pool\_delete,  
tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get, tx\_block\_release

## tx\_block\_release

---

Release a fixed-size block of memory

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_release(VOID *block_ptr)
```

### Description

This service releases a previously allocated block back to its associated memory pool. If there are one or more threads suspended waiting for memory block from this pool, the first thread suspended is given this memory block and resumed.

**i** *The application must prevent using a memory block area after it has been released back to the pool.*

### Input Parameters

<b>block_ptr</b>	Pointer to the previously allocated memory block.
------------------	---

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful memory block release.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid pointer to memory block.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes



## Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL my_pool;
unsigned char *memory_ptr;
UINT status;

/* Release a memory block back to my_pool. Assume that the
   pool has been created and the memory block has been
   allocated. */
status = tx_block_release((VOID *) memory_ptr);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the block of memory pointed
   to by memory_ptr has been returned to the pool. */
```

## See Also

`tx_block_allocate`, `tx_block_pool_create`, `tx_block_pool_delete`,  
`tx_block_pool_info_get`, `tx_block_pool_prioritize`

## tx\_byte\_allocate

Allocate bytes of memory

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_allocate(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr,
                     VOID **memory_ptr, ULONG memory_size,
                     ULONG wait_option)
```

### Description

This service allocates the specified number of bytes from the specified byte-memory pool.

*i* The performance of this service is a function of the block size and the amount of fragmentation in the pool. Hence, this service should not be used during time-critical threads of execution.

### Input Parameters

<b>pool_ptr</b>	Pointer to a previously created memory pool.
<b>memory_ptr</b>	Pointer to a destination memory pointer. On successful allocation, the address of the allocated memory area is placed where this parameter points to.
<b>memory_size</b>	Number of bytes requested.
<b>wait_option</b>	Defines how the service behaves if there is not enough memory available. The wait options are defined as follows:

<b>TX_NO_WAIT</b>	(0x00000000)
<b>TX_WAIT_FOREVER</b>	(0xFFFFFFFF)
<i>timeout value</i>	(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFF)

Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from initialization.*

Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until enough memory is available.

Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFF) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for the memory.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful memory allocation.
<b>TX_DELETED</b>	(0x01)	Memory pool was deleted while thread was suspended.
<b>TX_NO_MEMORY</b>	(0x10)	Service was unable to allocate the memory.
<b>TX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
<b>TX_POOL_ERROR</b>	(0x02)	Invalid memory pool pointer.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid pointer to destination pointer.
<b>TX_WAIT_ERROR</b>	(0x04)	A wait option other than TX_NO_WAIT was specified on a call from a non-thread.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_BYTE_POOL my_pool;
unsigned char *memory_ptr;
UINT status;

/* Allocate a 112 byte memory area from my_pool. Assume
   that the pool has already been created with a call to
   tx_byte_pool_create. */
status = tx_byte_allocate(&my_pool, (VOID **) &memory_ptr,
                          112, TX_NO_WAIT);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, memory_ptr contains the
   address of the allocated memory area. */
```

## See Also

`tx_byte_pool_create`, `tx_byte_pool_delete`, `tx_byte_pool_info_get`,  
`tx_byte_pool_prioritize`, `tx_byte_release`



## tx\_byte\_pool\_create

---

Create a memory pool of bytes

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_create(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr,
                        CHAR *name_ptr, VOID *pool_start,
                        ULONG pool_size)
```

### Description

This service creates a memory pool in the area specified. Initially the pool consists of basically one very large free block. However, the pool is broken into smaller blocks as allocations are made.

### Input Parameters

<b>pool_ptr</b>	Pointer to a memory pool control block.
<b>name_ptr</b>	Pointer to the name of the memory pool.
<b>pool_start</b>	Starting address of the memory pool.
<b>pool_size</b>	Total number of bytes available for the memory pool.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful memory pool creation.
<b>TX_POOL_ERROR</b>	(0x02)	Invalid memory pool pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the pool is already created.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid starting address of the pool.
<b>TX_SIZE_ERROR</b>	(0x05)	Size of pool is invalid.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_BYTE_POOL my_pool;
UINT status;

/* Create a memory pool whose total size is 2000 bytes
   starting at address 0x500000. */
status = tx_byte_pool_create(&my_pool, "my_pool_name",
                             (VOID *) 0x500000, 2000);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_pool is available for
   allocating memory. */
```

## See Also

`tx_byte_allocate`, `tx_byte_pool_delete`, `tx_byte_pool_info_get`,  
`tx_byte_pool_prioritize`, `tx_byte_release`

## tx\_byte\_pool\_delete

---

Delete a memory pool of bytes

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_delete(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr)
```

### Description

This service deletes the specified memory pool. All threads suspended waiting for memory from this pool are resumed and given a TX\_DELETED return status.

***i** It is the application's responsibility to manage the memory area associated with the pool, which is available after this service completes. In addition, the application must prevent use of a deleted pool or memory previously allocated from it.*

### Input Parameters

**pool\_ptr**                      Pointer to a previously created memory pool.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful memory pool deletion.
<b>TX_POOL_ERROR</b>	(0x02)	Invalid memory pool pointer.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes



## Example

```
TX_BYTE_POOL my_pool;
UINT status;

/* Delete entire memory pool. Assume that the pool has already
   been created with a call to tx_byte_pool_create. */
status = tx_byte_pool_delete(&my_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, memory pool is deleted. */
```

## See Also

tx\_byte\_allocate, tx\_byte\_pool\_create, tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get,  
tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize, tx\_byte\_release

## tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get

---

Retrieve information about byte pool

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_info_get(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr, CHAR **name,
                           ULONG *available, ULONG *fragments,
                           TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
                           ULONG *suspended_count,
                           TX_BYTE_POOL **next_pool)
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about the specified memory byte pool.

### Input Parameters

<b>pool_ptr</b>	Pointer to previously created memory pool.
<b>name</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer to the byte pool's name.
<b>available</b>	Pointer to destination for the number of available bytes in the pool.
<b>fragments</b>	Pointer to destination for the total number of memory fragments in the byte pool.
<b>first_suspended</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this byte pool.
<b>suspended_count</b>	Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this byte pool.
<b>next_pool</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created byte pool.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful pool information retrieve.
<b>TX_POOL_ERROR</b>	(0x02)	Invalid memory pool pointer.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid pointer (NULL) for any destination pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_BYTE_POOL my_pool;
CHAR *name;
ULONG available;
ULONG fragments;
TX_THREAD *first_suspended;
ULONG suspended_count;
TX_BYTE_POOL *next_pool;
UINT status;

/* Retrieve information about a the previously created
   block pool "my_pool." */
status = tx_byte_pool_info_get(&my_pool, &name,
                               &available, &fragments,
                               &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
                               &next_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
   valid. */
```

## See Also

tx\_byte\_allocate, tx\_byte\_pool\_create, tx\_byte\_pool\_delete,  
tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize, tx\_byte\_release

## tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize

---

Prioritize the byte pool suspension list

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_prioritize(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr)
```

### Description

This service places the highest priority thread suspended for memory on this pool at the front of the suspension list. All other threads remain in the same FIFO order they were suspended in.

### Input Parameters

<b>pool_ptr</b>	Pointer to a memory pool control block.
-----------------	---

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful memory pool prioritize.
<b>TX_POOL_ERROR</b>	(0x02)	Invalid memory pool pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_BYTE_POOL my_pool;
UINT status;

/* Ensure that the highest priority thread will receive
   the next free memory from this pool. */
status = tx_byte_pool_prioritize(&my_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the highest priority
   suspended thread is at the front of the list. The
   next tx_byte_release call will wake up this thread,
   if there is enough memory to satisfy its request. */
```

## See Also

`tx_byte_allocate`, `tx_byte_pool_create`, `tx_byte_pool_delete`,  
`tx_byte_pool_info_get`, `tx_byte_release`

## tx\_byte\_release

---

Release bytes back to memory pool

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_release(VOID *memory_ptr)
```

### Description

This service releases a previously allocated memory area back to its associated pool. If there are one or more threads suspended waiting for memory from this pool, each suspended thread is given memory and resumed until the memory is exhausted or until there are no more suspended threads. This process of allocating memory to suspended threads always begins with the first thread suspended.

**i** | *The application must prevent using the memory area after it is released.*

### Input Parameters

<b>memory_ptr</b>	Pointer to the previously allocated memory area.
-------------------	--

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful memory release.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid memory area pointer.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
unsigned char *memory_ptr;
UINT status;

/* Release a memory back to my_pool. Assume that the memory
   area was previously allocated from my_pool. */
status = tx_byte_release((VOID *) memory_ptr);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the memory pointed to by
   memory_ptr has been returned to the pool. */
```

## See Also

`tx_byte_allocate`, `tx_byte_pool_create`, `tx_byte_pool_delete`,  
`tx_byte_pool_info_get`, `tx_byte_pool_prioritize`

## tx\_event\_flags\_create

---

Create an event flag group

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_create(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,  
                           CHAR *name_ptr)
```

### Description

This service creates a group of 32 event flags. All 32 event flags in the group are initialized to zero. Each event flag is represented by a single bit.

### Input Parameters

<b>group_ptr</b>	Pointer to an event flags group control block.
<b>name_ptr</b>	Pointer to the name of the event flags group.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful event group creation.
<b>TX_GROUP_ERROR</b>	(0x06)	Invalid event group pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the event group is already created.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

### Preemption Possible

No



## Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_group;
UINT status;

/* Create an event flag group. */
status = tx_event_flags_create(&my_event_group,
                               "my_event_group_name");

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_event_flag_group is ready
   for get and set services. */
```

## See Also

tx\_event\_flags\_delete, tx\_event\_flags\_get, tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get,  
tx\_event\_flags\_set

## tx\_event\_flags\_delete

---

Delete an event flag group

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_delete(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr)
```

### Description

This service deletes the specified event flag group. All threads suspended waiting for events from this group are resumed and given a TX\_DELETED return status.

*i* | The application must prevent use of a deleted event flag group.

### Input Parameters

<b>group_ptr</b>	Pointer to a previously created event flags group.
------------------	--

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful event flag group deletion.
<b>TX_GROUP_ERROR</b>	(0x06)	Invalid event flag group pointer.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_flag_group;
UINT status;

/* Delete event flag group. Assume that the group has
   already been created with a call to
   tx_event_flags_create. */
status = tx_event_flags_delete(&my_event_flags_group);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the event flags group is
   deleted. */
```

## See Also

tx\_event\_flags\_create, tx\_event\_flags\_get, tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get,  
tx\_event\_flags\_set

## tx\_event\_flags\_get

Get event flags from event flag group

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_get(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
                        ULONG requested_flags, UINT get_option,
                        ULONG *actual_flags_ptr, ULONG wait_option)
```

### Description

This service retrieves event flags from the specified event flag group. Each event flag group contains 32 event flags. Each flag is represented by a single bit. This service can retrieve a variety of event flag combinations, as selected by the input parameters.

### Input Parameters

**group\_ptr** Pointer to a previously created event flag group.

**requested\_flags** 32-bit unsigned variable that represents the requested event flags.

**get\_option** Specifies whether all or any of the requested event flags are required. The following are valid selections:

<b>TX_AND</b>	(0x02)
<b>TX_AND_CLEAR</b>	(0x03)
<b>TX_OR</b>	(0x00)
<b>TX_OR_CLEAR</b>	(0x01)

Selecting TX\_AND or TX\_AND\_CLEAR specifies that all event flags must be present in the group. Selecting TX\_OR or TX\_OR\_CLEAR specifies that any event flag is satisfactory. Event flags that satisfy the request are cleared (set to zero) if TX\_AND\_CLEAR or TX\_OR\_CLEAR are specified.

**actual\_flags\_ptr** Pointer to destination of where the retrieved event flags are placed. Note that the actual flags obtained may contain flags that were not requested.

**wait\_option**

Defines how the service behaves if the selected event flags are not set. The wait options are defined as follows:

<b>TX_NO_WAIT</b>	(0x00000000)
<b>TX_WAIT_FOREVER</b>	(0xFFFFFFFF)
timeout value	(0x00000001
	through
	0xFFFFFFFF)

Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., Initialization, timer, or ISR.

Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until the event flags are available.

Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFF) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for the event flags.

**Return Values**

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful event flags get.
<b>TX_DELETED</b>	(0x01)	Event flag group was deleted while thread was suspended.
<b>TX_NO_EVENTS</b>	(0x07)	Service was unable to get the specified events.
<b>TX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
<b>TX_GROUP_ERROR</b>	(0x06)	Invalid event flags group pointer.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid pointer for actual event flags.
<b>TX_WAIT_ERROR</b>	(0x04)	A wait option other than TX_NO_WAIT was specified on a call from a non-thread.
<b>TX_OPTION_ERROR</b>	(0x08)	Invalid get-option was specified.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_flags_group;
ULONG actual_events;
UINT status;

/* Request that event flags 0, 4, and 8 are all set. Also,
   if they are set they should be cleared. If the event
   flags are not set, this service suspends for a maximum of
   20 timer-ticks. */
status = tx_event_flags_get(&my_event_flags_group, 0x111,
                           TX_AND_CLEAR, &actual_events, 20);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, actual_events contains the
   actual events obtained. */
```

## See Also

tx\_event\_flags\_create, tx\_event\_flags\_delete, tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get,  
tx\_event\_flags\_set



## tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get

---

Retrieve information about event flags group

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_info_get(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
                             CHAR **name, ULONG *current_flags,
                             TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
                             ULONG *suspended_count,
                             TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP **next_group)
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about the specified event flags group.

### Input Parameters

<b>group_ptr</b>	Pointer to an event flags group control block.
<b>name</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer to the event flag group's name.
<b>current_flags</b>	Pointer to destination for the current set flags in the event flag group.
<b>first_suspended</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this event flag group.
<b>suspended_count</b>	Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this event flag group.
<b>next_group</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created event flag group.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful event group information retrieval.
<b>TX_GROUP_ERROR</b>	(0x06)	Invalid event group pointer.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid pointer (NULL) for any destination pointer.



## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_group;
CHAR *name;
ULONG current_flags;
TX_THREAD *first_suspended;
ULONG suspended_count;
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *next_group;
UINT status;

/* Retrieve information about a the previously created
   event flag group "my_event_group." */
status = tx_event_flags_info_get(&my_event_group, &name,
                                &current_flags,
                                &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
                                &next_group);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
   valid. */
```

## See Also

tx\_event\_flags\_create, tx\_event\_flags\_delete, tx\_event\_flags\_get,  
tx\_event\_flags\_set

## tx\_event\_flags\_set

---

Set event flags in an event flag group

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_set(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
                       ULONG flags_to_set, UINT set_option)
```

### Description

This service sets or clears event flags in an event flag group, depending upon the specified set-option. All suspended threads whose event flag request is now satisfied are resumed.

### Input Parameters

<b>group_ptr</b>	Pointer to the previously created event flag group control block.
<b>flags_to_set</b>	Specifies the event flags to set or clear based upon the set option selected.
<b>set_option</b>	Specifies whether the event flags specified are ANDed or ORed into the current event flags of the group. The following are valid selections:

**TX\_AND** (0x02)

**TX\_OR** (0x00)

Selecting TX\_AND specifies that the specified event flags are **AND**ed into the current event flags in the group. This option is often used to clear event flags in a group. Otherwise, if TX\_OR is specified, the specified event flags are **OR**ed with the current event in the group.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful event flag set.
<b>TX_GROUP_ERROR</b>	(0x06)	Invalid pointer to event flags group.
<b>TX_OPTION_ERROR</b>	(0x08)	Invalid set-option specified.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_flags_group;
UINT status;

/* Set event flags 0, 4, and 8. */
status = tx_event_flags_set(&my_event_flags_group,
                           0x111, TX_OR);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the event flags have been
   set and any suspended thread whose request was satisfied
   has been resumed. */
```

## See Also

tx\_event\_flags\_create, tx\_event\_flags\_delete, tx\_event\_flags\_get,  
tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get

## tx\_interrupt\_control

---

Enables and disables interrupts

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_interrupt_control (UINT new_posture)
```

### Description

This service enables or disables interrupts as specified by the input parameter **new\_posture**.

***i** If this service is called from an application thread, the interrupt posture remains part of that thread's context. For example, if the thread calls this routine to disable interrupts and then suspends, when it is resumed, interrupts are disabled again.*

***!** This service should not be used to enable interrupts during initialization! Doing so could cause unpredictable results.*

### Input Parameters

**new\_posture**

This parameter specifies whether interrupts are disabled or enabled. Legal values include **TX\_INT\_DISABLE** and **TX\_INT\_ENABLE**. The actual values for these parameters are port specific. In addition, some processing architectures might support additional interrupt disable postures. Please see the ***readme.txt*** information supplied on the distribution disk for more details.

### Return Values

previous posture

This service returns the previous interrupt posture to the caller. This allows users of the service to restore the previous posture after interrupts are disabled.

**Allowed From**

Threads, timers, and ISRs

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
UINT my_old_posture;

/* Lockout interrupts */
my_old_posture = tx_interrupt_control(TX_INT_DISABLE);

/* Perform critical operations that need interrupts
   locked-out.... */

/* Restore previous interrupt lockout posture. */
tx_interrupt_control(my_old_posture);
```

**See Also**

None

## tx\_mutex\_create

---

Create a mutual exclusion mutex

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_create(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr,
                    CHAR *name_ptr, UINT priority_inherit)
```

### Description

This service creates a mutex for inter-thread mutual exclusion for resource protection.

### Input Parameters

<b>mutex_ptr</b>	Pointer to a mutex control block.
<b>name_ptr</b>	Pointer to the name of the mutex.
<b>priority_inherit</b>	Specifies whether or not this mutex supports priority inheritance. If this value is TX_INHERIT, then priority inheritance is supported. However, if TX_NO_INHERIT is specified, priority inheritance is not supported by this mutex.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful mutex creation.
<b>TX_MUTEX_ERROR</b>	(0x1C)	Invalid mutex pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the mutex is already created.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>TX_INHERIT_ERROR</b>	(0x1F)	Invalid priority inherit parameter.

### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_MUTEX my_mutex;
UINT status;

/* Create a mutex to provide protection over a
   common resource. */
status = tx_mutex_create(&my_mutex, "my_mutex_name",
                        TX_NO_INHERIT);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_mutex is ready for
   use. */
```

## See Also

`tx_mutex_delete`, `tx_mutex_get`, `tx_mutex_info_get`, `tx_mutex_prioritize`,  
`tx_mutex_put`

## tx\_mutex\_delete

---

Delete a mutual exclusion mutex

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_delete(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr)
```

### Description

This service deletes the specified mutex. All threads suspended waiting for the mutex are resumed and given a TX\_DELETED return status.

*i* It is the application's responsibility to prevent use of a deleted mutex.

### Input Parameters

<b>mutex_ptr</b>	Pointer to a previously created mutex.
------------------	--

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful mutex deletion.
<b>TX_MUTEX_ERROR</b>	(0x1C)	Invalid mutex pointer.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes



## Example

```
TX_MUTEX my_mutex;
UINT status;

/* Delete a mutex. Assume that the mutex
   has already been created. */
status = tx_mutex_delete(&my_mutex);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the mutex is
   deleted. */
```

## See Also

tx\_mutex\_create, tx\_mutex\_get, tx\_mutex\_info\_get, tx\_mutex\_prioritize,  
tx\_mutex\_put

## tx\_mutex\_get

Obtain ownership of a mutex

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_get(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr, ULONG wait_option)
```

### Description

This service attempts to obtain exclusive ownership of the specified mutex. If the calling thread already owns the mutex, an internal counter is incremented and a successful status is returned.

If the mutex is owned by another thread and this thread is higher priority and priority inheritance was specified at mutex create, the lower priority thread's priority will be temporarily raised to that of the calling thread.

*i*

*Note that the priority of the lower-priority thread owning a mutex with priority-inheritance should never be modified by an external thread during mutex ownership.*

### Input Parameters

**mutex\_ptr**

Pointer to a previously created mutex.

**wait\_option**

Defines how the service behaves if the mutex is already owned by another thread. The wait options are defined as follows:

<b>TX_NO_WAIT</b>	(0x00000000)
<b>TX_WAIT_FOREVER</b>	(0xFFFFFFFF)
timeout value	(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFF)

Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from Initialization.*

Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until the mutex is available.

Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFF) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for the mutex.

## Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful mutex get operation.
<b>TX_DELETED</b>	(0x01)	Mutex was deleted while thread was suspended.
<b>TX_NOT_AVAILABLE</b>	(0x1D)	Service was unable to get ownership of the mutex.
<b>TX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
<b>TX_MUTEX_ERROR</b>	(0x1C)	Invalid mutex pointer.
<b>TX_WAIT_ERROR</b>	(0x04)	A wait option other than TX_NO_WAIT was specified on a call from a non-thread.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, and timers

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_MUTEX my_mutex;
UINT status;

/* Obtain exclusive ownership of the mutex "my_mutex".
   If the mutex "my_mutex" is not available, suspend until it
   becomes available. */
status = tx_mutex_get(&my_mutex, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
```

## See Also

tx\_mutex\_create, tx\_mutex\_delete, tx\_mutex\_info\_get,  
tx\_mutex\_prioritize, tx\_mutex\_put

## tx\_mutex\_info\_get

---

Retrieve information about a mutex

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_info_get(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr, CHAR **name,
                      ULONG *count, TX_THREAD **owner,
                      TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
                      ULONG *suspended_count, TX_MUTEX **next_mutex)
```

### Description

This service retrieves information from the specified mutex.

### Input Parameters

<b>mutex_ptr</b>	Pointer to mutex control block.
<b>name</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer to the mutex's name.
<b>count</b>	Pointer to destination for the ownership count of the mutex.
<b>owner</b>	Pointer to destination for the owning thread's pointer.
<b>first_suspended</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this mutex.
<b>suspended_count</b>	Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this mutex.
<b>next_mutex</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created mutex.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful mutex information retrieval.
<b>TX_MUTEX_ERROR</b>	(0x1C)	Invalid mutex pointer.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid pointer (NULL) for any destination pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_MUTEX my_mutex;
CHAR *name;
ULONG count;
TX_THREAD *owner;
TX_THREAD *first_suspended;
ULONG suspended_count;
TX_MUTEX *next_mutex;
UINT status;

/* Retrieve information about a the previously created
   mutex "my_mutex." */
status = tx_mutex_info_get(&my_mutex, &name,
                           &count, &owner,
                           &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
                           &next_mutex);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
   valid. */
```

## See Also

tx\_mutex\_create, tx\_mutex\_delete, tx\_mutex\_get, tx\_mutex\_prioritize,  
tx\_mutex\_put

## tx\_mutex\_prioritize

---

Prioritize mutex suspension list

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_prioritize(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr)
```

### Description

This service places the highest priority thread suspended for ownership of the mutex at the front of the suspension list. All other threads remain in the same FIFO order they were suspended in.

### Input Parameters

<b>mutex_ptr</b>	Pointer to the previously created mutex.
------------------	--

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful mutex prioritize.
<b>TX_MUTEX_ERROR</b>	(0x1C)	Invalid mutex pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_MUTEX my_mutex;
UINT status;

/* Ensure that the highest priority thread will receive
ownership of the mutex when it becomes available. */
status = tx_mutex_prioritize(&my_mutex);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the highest priority
suspended thread is at the front of the list. The
next tx_mutex_put call that releases ownership of the
mutex will give ownership to this thread and wake it
up. */
```

## See Also

tx\_mutex\_create, tx\_mutex\_delete, tx\_mutex\_get, tx\_mutex\_info\_get,  
tx\_mutex\_put

## tx\_mutex\_put

---

Release ownership of mutex

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_put(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr)
```

### Description

This service decrements the ownership count of the specified mutex. If the ownership count is zero, the mutex is made available.

***i** If priority inheritance was selected during mutex creation, the priority of the releasing thread will be restored to the priority it had when it originally obtained ownership of the mutex. Any other priority changes made to the releasing thread during ownership of the mutex may be undone.*

### Input Parameters

<b>mutex_ptr</b>	Pointer to the previously created mutex.
------------------	--

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful mutex release.
<b>TX_NOT_OWNED</b>	(0x1E)	Mutex is not owned by caller.
<b>TX_MUTEX_ERROR</b>	(0x1C)	Invalid pointer to mutex.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes



## Example

```
TX_MUTEX my_mutex;
UINT status;

/* Release ownership of "my_mutex." */
status = tx_mutex_put(&my_mutex);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the mutex ownership
   count has been decremented and if zero, released. */
```

## See Also

tx\_mutex\_create, tx\_mutex\_delete, tx\_mutex\_get, tx\_mutex\_info\_get,  
tx\_mutex\_prioritize

## tx\_queue\_create

---

Create a message queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_create(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, CHAR *name_ptr,
                    UINT message_size,
                    VOID *queue_start, ULONG queue_size)
```

### Description

This service creates a message queue that is typically used for inter-thread communication. The total number of messages is calculated from the specified message size and the total number of bytes in the queue.

*i*

*If the total number of bytes specified in the queue's memory area is not evenly divisible by the specified message size, the remaining bytes in the memory area are not used.*

### Input Parameters

<b>queue_ptr</b>	Pointer to a message queue control block.										
<b>name_ptr</b>	Pointer to the name of the message queue.										
<b>message_size</b>	Specifies the size of each message in the queue. Message sizes range from 1 32-bit word to 16 32-bit words. Valid message size options are defined as follows: <table> <tr> <td><b>TX_1_ULONG</b></td><td>(0x01)</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>TX_2_ULONG</b></td><td>(0x02)</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>TX_4_ULONG</b></td><td>(0x04)</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>TX_8_ULONG</b></td><td>(0x08)</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>TX_16_ULONG</b></td><td>(0x10)</td></tr> </table>	<b>TX_1_ULONG</b>	(0x01)	<b>TX_2_ULONG</b>	(0x02)	<b>TX_4_ULONG</b>	(0x04)	<b>TX_8_ULONG</b>	(0x08)	<b>TX_16_ULONG</b>	(0x10)
<b>TX_1_ULONG</b>	(0x01)										
<b>TX_2_ULONG</b>	(0x02)										
<b>TX_4_ULONG</b>	(0x04)										
<b>TX_8_ULONG</b>	(0x08)										
<b>TX_16_ULONG</b>	(0x10)										
<b>queue_start</b>	Starting address of the message queue.										
<b>queue_size</b>	Total number of bytes available for the message queue.										

## Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful message queue creation.
<b>TX_QUEUE_ERROR</b>	(0x09)	Invalid message queue pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the queue is already created.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid starting address of the message queue.
<b>TX_SIZE_ERROR</b>	(0x05)	Size of message queue is invalid.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization and threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
UINT status;

/* Create a message queue whose total size is 2000 bytes
   starting at address 0x300000. Each message in this
   queue is defined to be 4 32-bit words long. */
status = tx_queue_create(&my_queue, "my_queue_name",
                        TX_4_ULONG, (VOID *) 0x300000, 2000);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_queue contains room
   for storing 125 messages (2000 bytes/ 16 bytes per
   message). */
```

## See Also

`tx_queue_delete`, `tx_queue_flush`, `tx_queue_front_send`,  
`tx_queue_info_get`, `tx_queue_prioritize`, `tx_queue_receive`,  
`tx_queue_send`

## tx\_queue\_delete

---

Delete a message queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_delete(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr)
```

### Description

This service deletes the specified message queue. All threads suspended waiting for a message from this queue are resumed and given a TX\_DELETED return status.

*i*

*It is the application's responsibility to manage the memory area associated with the queue, which is available after this service completes. In addition, the application must prevent use of a deleted queue.*

### Input Parameters

<b>queue_ptr</b>	Pointer to a previously created message queue.
------------------	--

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful message queue deletion.
<b>TX_QUEUE_ERROR</b>	(0x09)	Invalid message queue pointer.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
UINT status;

/* Delete entire message queue. Assume that the queue
   has already been created with a call to
   tx_queue_create. */
status = tx_queue_delete(&my_queue);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the message queue is
   deleted. */
```

## See Also

`tx_queue_create`, `tx_queue_flush`, `tx_queue_front_send`,  
`tx_queue_info_get`, `tx_queue_prioritize`, `tx_queue_receive`,  
`tx_queue_send`

## tx\_queue\_flush

---

Empty messages in a message queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_flush(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr)
```

### Description

This service deletes all messages stored in the specified message queue. If the queue is full, messages of all suspended threads are discarded. Each suspended thread is then resumed with a return status that indicates the message send was successful. If the queue is empty, this service does nothing.

### Input Parameters

<b>queue_ptr</b>	Pointer to a previously created message queue.
------------------	--

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful message queue flush.
<b>TX_QUEUE_ERROR</b>	(0x09)	Invalid message queue pointer.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
UINT status;

/* Flush out all pending messages in the specified message
   queue. Assume that the queue has already been created
   with a call to tx_queue_create. */
status = tx_queue_flush(&my_queue);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the message queue is
   empty. */
```

## See Also

tx\_queue\_create, tx\_queue\_delete, tx\_queue\_front\_send,  
tx\_queue\_info\_get, tx\_queue\_prioritize, tx\_queue\_receive,  
tx\_queue\_send

## tx\_queue\_front\_send

---

Send a message to the front of queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_front_send(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,
                        VOID *source_ptr, ULONG wait_option)
```

### Description

This service sends a message to the front location of the specified message queue. The message is **copied** to the front of the queue from the memory area specified by the source pointer.

### Input Parameters

<b>queue_ptr</b>	Pointer to a message queue control block.						
<b>source_ptr</b>	Pointer to the message.						
<b>wait_option</b>	Defines how the service behaves if the message queue is full. The wait options are defined as follows: <table> <tr> <td><b>TX_NO_WAIT</b></td><td>(0x00000000)</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>TX_WAIT_FOREVER</b></td><td>(0xFFFFFFFF)</td></tr> <tr> <td>timeout value</td><td>(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)</td></tr> </table>	<b>TX_NO_WAIT</b>	(0x00000000)	<b>TX_WAIT_FOREVER</b>	(0xFFFFFFFF)	timeout value	(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)
<b>TX_NO_WAIT</b>	(0x00000000)						
<b>TX_WAIT_FOREVER</b>	(0xFFFFFFFF)						
timeout value	(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)						

Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., Initialization, timer, or ISR.*

Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until there is room in the queue.

Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFFE) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for room in the queue.



## Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful sending of message.
<b>TX_DELETED</b>	(0x01)	Message queue was deleted while thread was suspended.
<b>TX_QUEUE_FULL</b>	(0x0B)	Service was unable to send message because the queue was full.
<b>TX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
<b>TX_QUEUE_ERROR</b>	(0x09)	Invalid message queue pointer.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid source pointer for message.
<b>TX_WAIT_ERROR</b>	(0x04)	A wait option other than TX_NO_WAIT was specified on a call from a non-thread.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
UINT status;
ULONG my_message[4];

/* Send a message to the front of "my_queue." Return
   immediately, regardless of success. This wait
   option is used for calls from initialization, timers,
   and ISRs. */
status = tx_queue_front_send(&my_queue, my_message,
                             TX_NO_WAIT);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the message is at the front
   of the specified queue. */
```

## See Also

tx\_queue\_create, tx\_queue\_delete, tx\_queue\_flush, tx\_queue\_info\_get,  
tx\_queue\_prioritize, tx\_queue\_receive, tx\_queue\_send

## tx\_queue\_info\_get

---

Retrieve information about a queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_info_get(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, CHAR **name,
    ULONG *enqueued, ULONG *available_storage,
    TX_THREAD **first_suspended, ULONG *suspended_count,
    TX_QUEUE **next_queue)
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about the specified message queue.

### Input Parameters

<b>queue_ptr</b>	Pointer to a previously created message queue.
<b>name</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer to the queue's name.
<b>enqueued</b>	Pointer to destination for the number of messages currently in the queue.
<b>available_storage</b>	Pointer to destination for the number of messages the queue currently has space for.
<b>first_suspended</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this queue.
<b>suspended_count</b>	Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this queue.
<b>next_queue</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created queue.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful queue information get.
<b>TX_QUEUE_ERROR</b>	(0x09)	Invalid message queue pointer.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid pointer (NULL) for any destination pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
CHAR *name;
ULONG enqueued;
TX_THREAD *first_suspended;
ULONG suspended_count;
TX_QUEUE *next_queue;
UINT status;

/* Retrieve information about a the previously created
   message queue "my_queue." */
status = tx_queue_info_get(&my_queue, &name,
                           &enqueued,
                           &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
                           &next_queue);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
   valid. */
```

### See Also

tx\_queue\_create, tx\_queue\_delete, tx\_queue\_flush,  
tx\_queue\_front\_send, tx\_queue\_prioritize, tx\_queue\_receive,  
tx\_queue\_send

## tx\_queue\_prioritize

---

Prioritize queue suspension list

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_prioritize(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr)
```

### Description

This service places the highest priority thread suspended for a message (or to place a message) on this queue at the front of the suspension list. All other threads remain in the same FIFO order they were suspended in.

### Input Parameters

<b>queue_ptr</b>	Pointer to a previously created message queue.
------------------	--

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful queue prioritize.
<b>TX_QUEUE_ERROR</b>	(0x09)	Invalid message queue pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
UINT status;

/* Ensure that the highest priority thread will receive
   the next message placed on this queue. */
status = tx_queue_prioritize(&my_queue);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the highest priority
   suspended thread is at the front of the list. The
   next tx_queue_send or tx_queue_front_send call made
   to this queue will wake up this thread. */
```

## See Also

tx\_queue\_create, tx\_queue\_delete, tx\_queue\_flush,  
tx\_queue\_front\_send, tx\_queue\_info\_get, tx\_queue\_receive,  
tx\_queue\_send

## tx\_queue\_receive

Get a message from message queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_receive(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,
                     VOID *destination_ptr, ULONG wait_option)
```

### Description

This service retrieves a message from the specified message queue. The retrieved message is **copied** from the queue into the memory area specified by the destination pointer. That message is then removed from the queue.

*i*

*The specified destination memory area must be large enough to hold the message; i.e., the message destination pointed to by **destination\_ptr** must be at least as large as the message size for this queue. Otherwise, if the destination is not large enough, memory corruption occurs in the following memory area.*

### Input Parameters

<b>queue_ptr</b>	Pointer to a previously created message queue.
<b>destination_ptr</b>	Location of where to copy the message.
<b>wait_option</b>	Defines how the service behaves if the message queue is empty. The wait options are defined as follows:

<b>TX_NO_WAIT</b>	(0x00000000)
<b>TX_WAIT_FOREVER</b>	(0xFFFFFFFF)
timeout value	(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFF)

Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., Initialization, timer, or ISR.

Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until a message is available.

Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFF) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for a message.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful retrieval of message.
<b>TX_DELETED</b>	(0x01)	Message queue was deleted while thread was suspended.
<b>TX_QUEUE_EMPTY</b>	(0x0A)	Service was unable to retrieve a message because the queue was empty.
<b>TX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
<b>TX_QUEUE_ERROR</b>	(0x09)	Invalid message queue pointer.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid destination pointer for message.
<b>TX_WAIT_ERROR</b>	(0x04)	A wait option other than TX_NO_WAIT was specified on a call from a non-thread.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
UINT status;
ULONG my_message[4];

/* Retrieve a message from "my_queue." If the queue is
   empty, suspend until a message is present. Note that
   this suspension is only possible from application
   threads. */
status = tx_queue_receive(&my_queue, my_message,
                          TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the message is in
   "my_message." */
```

## See Also

tx\_queue\_create, tx\_queue\_delete, tx\_queue\_flush,  
tx\_queue\_front\_send, tx\_queue\_info\_get, tx\_queue\_prioritize,  
tx\_queue\_send





## tx\_queue\_send

---

Send a message to message queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_send(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,
                  VOID *source_ptr, ULONG wait_option)
```

### Description

This service sends a message to the specified message queue. The sent message is **copied** to the queue from the memory area specified by the source pointer.

### Input Parameters

<b>queue_ptr</b>	Pointer to a previously created message queue.
<b>source_ptr</b>	Pointer to the message.
<b>wait_option</b>	Defines how the service behaves if the message queue is full. The wait options are defined as follows:

<b>TX_NO_WAIT</b>	(0x00000000)
<b>TX_WAIT_FOREVER</b>	(0xFFFFFFFF)
timeout value	(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFF)

Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., Initialization, timer, or ISR.*

Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until there is room in the queue.

Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFF) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for room in the queue.

## Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful sending of message.
<b>TX_DELETED</b>	(0x01)	Message queue was deleted while thread was suspended.
<b>TX_QUEUE_FULL</b>	(0x0B)	Service was unable to send message because the queue was full.
<b>TX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
<b>TX_QUEUE_ERROR</b>	(0x09)	Invalid message queue pointer.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid source pointer for message.
<b>TX_WAIT_ERROR</b>	(0x04)	A wait option other than TX_NO_WAIT was specified on a call from a non-thread.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
UINT status;
ULONG my_message[4];

/* Send a message to "my_queue." Return immediately,
   regardless of success. This wait option is used for
   calls from initialization, timers, and ISRs. */
status = tx_queue_send(&my_queue, my_message, TX_NO_WAIT);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the message is in the
   queue. */
```

## See Also

`tx_queue_create`, `tx_queue_delete`, `tx_queue_flush`,  
`tx_queue_front_send`, `tx_queue_info_get`, `tx_queue_prioritize`,  
`tx_queue_receive`

## tx\_semaphore\_create

---

Create a counting semaphore

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_create(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,
                        CHAR *name_ptr, ULONG initial_count)
```

### Description

This service creates a counting semaphore for inter-thread synchronization. The initial semaphore count is specified as an input parameter.

### Input Parameters

<b>semaphore_ptr</b>	Pointer to a semaphore control block.
<b>name_ptr</b>	Pointer to the name of the semaphore.
<b>initial_count</b>	Specifies the initial count for this semaphore. Legal values range from 0x00000000 through 0xFFFFFFFF.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful semaphore creation.
<b>TX_SEMAPHORE_ERROR</b>	(0x0C)	Invalid semaphore pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the semaphore is already created.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;  
UINT status;  
  
/* Create a counting semaphore whose initial value is 1.  
   This is typically the technique used to make a binary  
   semaphore. Binary semaphores are used to provide  
   protection over a common resource. */  
status = tx_semaphore_create(&my_semaphore,  
                             "my_semaphore_name", 1);  
  
/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_semaphore is ready for  
   use. */
```

## See Also

`tx_semaphore_delete`, `tx_semaphore_get`, `tx_semaphore_info_get`,  
`tx_semaphore_prioritize`, `tx_semaphore_put`

## tx\_semaphore\_delete

---

Delete a counting semaphore

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_delete(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr)
```

### Description

This service deletes the specified counting semaphore. All threads suspended waiting for a semaphore instance are resumed and given a TX\_DELETED return status.

*i* It is the application's responsibility to prevent use of a deleted semaphore.

### Input Parameters

**semaphore\_ptr**      Pointer to a previously created semaphore.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful counting semaphore deletion.
<b>TX_SEMAPHORE_ERROR</b>	(0x0C)	Invalid counting semaphore pointer.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;  
UINT status;  
  
/* Delete counting semaphore. Assume that the counting  
   semaphore has already been created. */  
status = tx_semaphore_delete(&my_semaphore);  
  
/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the counting semaphore is  
   deleted. */
```

## See Also

`tx_semaphore_create`, `tx_semaphore_get`, `tx_semaphore_info_get`,  
`tx_semaphore_prioritize`, `tx_semaphore_put`

## tx\_semaphore\_get

Get instance from counting semaphore

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_get(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,
                     ULONG wait_option)
```

### Description

This service retrieves an instance (a single count) from the specified counting semaphore. As a result, the specified semaphore's count is decreased by one.

### Input Parameters

<b>semaphore_ptr</b>	Pointer to a previously created counting semaphore.
<b>wait_option</b>	Defines how the service behaves if there are no instances of the semaphore available; i.e., the semaphore count is zero. The wait options are defined as follows:

<b>TX_NO_WAIT</b>	(0x00000000)
<b>TX_WAIT_FOREVER</b>	(0xFFFFFFFF)
timeout value	(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFF)

Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., initialization, timer, or ISR.*

Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until a semaphore instance is available.

Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFF) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for a semaphore instance.



## Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful retrieval of a semaphore instance.
<b>TX_DELETED</b>	(0x01)	Counting semaphore was deleted while thread was suspended.
<b>TX_NO_INSTANCE</b>	(0x0D)	Service was unable to retrieve an instance of the counting semaphore (semaphore count is zero).
<b>TX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
<b>TX_SEMAPHORE_ERROR</b>	(0x0C)	Invalid counting semaphore pointer.
<b>TX_WAIT_ERROR</b>	(0x04)	A wait option other than TX_NO_WAIT was specified on a call from a non-thread.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;
UINT status;

/* Get a semaphore instance from the semaphore
"my_semaphore." If the semaphore count is zero,
suspend until an instance becomes available.
Note that this suspension is only possible from
application threads. */
status = tx_semaphore_get(&my_semaphore, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the thread has obtained
an instance of the semaphore. */
```

## See Also

tx\_semaphore\_create, tx\_semaphore\_delete, tx\_semaphore\_info\_get,  
tx\_semaphore\_prioritize, tx\_semaphore\_put

## tx\_semaphore\_info\_get

---

Retrieve information about a semaphore

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_info_get(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,
                           CHAR **name, ULONG *current_value,
                           TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
                           ULONG *suspended_count,
                           TX_SEMAPHORE **next_semaphore)
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about the specified semaphore.

### Input Parameters

<b>semaphore_ptr</b>	Pointer to semaphore control block.
<b>name</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer to the semaphore's name.
<b>current_value</b>	Pointer to destination for the current semaphore's count.
<b>first_suspended</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this semaphore.
<b>suspended_count</b>	Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this semaphore.
<b>next_semaphore</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created semaphore.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful semaphore information retrieval.
<b>TX_SEMAPHORE_ERROR</b>	(0x0C)	Invalid semaphore pointer.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid pointer (NULL) for any destination pointer.

**Allowed From**

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;
CHAR *name;
ULONG current_value;
TX_THREAD *first_suspended;
ULONG suspended_count;
TX_SEMAPHORE *next_semaphore;
UINT status;

/* Retrieve information about a the previously created
   semaphore "my_semaphore." */
status = tx_semaphore_info_get(&my_semaphore, &name,
                               &current_value,
                               &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
                               &next_semaphore);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
   valid. */
```

**See Also**

tx\_semaphore\_create, tx\_semaphore\_delete, tx\_semaphore\_get,  
tx\_semaphore\_prioritize, tx\_semaphore\_put

## tx\_semaphore\_prioritize

---

Prioritize semaphore suspension list

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_prioritize(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr)
```

### Description

This service places the highest priority thread suspended for an instance of the semaphore at the front of the suspension list. All other threads remain in the same FIFO order they were suspended in.

### Input Parameters

**semaphore\_ptr**      Pointer to a previously created semaphore.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful semaphore prioritize.
<b>TX_SEMAPHORE_ERROR</b>	(0x0C)	Invalid counting semaphore pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;  
UINT status;  
  
/* Ensure that the highest priority thread will receive  
   the next instance of this semaphore. */  
status = tx_semaphore_prioritize(&my_semaphore);  
  
/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the highest priority  
   suspended thread is at the front of the list. The  
   next tx_semaphore_put call made to this queue will  
   wake up this thread. */
```

## See Also

tx\_semaphore\_create, tx\_semaphore\_delete, tx\_semaphore\_get,  
tx\_semaphore\_info\_get, tx\_semaphore\_put

## tx\_semaphore\_put

---

Place an instance in counting semaphore

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_put(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr)
```

### Description

This service puts an instance into the specified counting semaphore, which in reality increments the counting semaphore by one.

***i** If this service is called when the semaphore is all ones (0xFFFFFFFF), the new put operation will cause the semaphore to be reset to zero.*

### Input Parameters

<b>semaphore_ptr</b>	Pointer to the previously created counting semaphore control block.
----------------------	---

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful semaphore put.
<b>TX_SEMAPHORE_ERROR</b>	(0x0C)	Invalid pointer to counting semaphore.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;  
UINT status;  
  
/* Increment the counting semaphore "my_semaphore." */  
status = tx_semaphore_put(&my_semaphore);  
  
/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the semaphore count has  
   been incremented. Of course, if a thread was waiting,  
   it was given the semaphore instance and resumed. */
```

## See Also

`tx_semaphore_create`, `tx_semaphore_delete`, `tx_semaphore_info_get`,  
`tx_semaphore_prioritize`, `tx_semaphore_get`

## tx\_thread\_create

---

Create an application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_create(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
                     CHAR *name_ptr, VOID (*entry_function)(ULONG),
                     ULONG entry_input, VOID *stack_start,
                     ULONG stack_size, UINT priority,
                     UINT preempt_threshold, ULONG time_slice,
                     UINT auto_start)
```

### Description

This service creates an application thread that starts execution at the specified task entry function. The stack, priority, preemption-threshold, and time-slice are among the attributes specified by the input parameters. In addition, the initial execution state of the thread is also specified.

### Input Parameters

<b>thread_ptr</b>	Pointer to a thread control block.
<b>name_ptr</b>	Pointer to the name of the thread.
<b>entry_function</b>	Specifies the initial C function for thread execution. When a thread returns from this entry function, it is placed in a <i>completed</i> state and suspended indefinitely.
<b>entry_input</b>	A 32-bit value that is passed to the thread's entry function when it first executes. The use for this input is determined exclusively by the application.
<b>stack_start</b>	Starting address of the stack's memory area.
<b>stack_size</b>	Number bytes in the stack memory area. The thread's stack area must be large enough to handle its worst-case function call nesting and local variable usage.
<b>priority</b>	Numerical priority of thread. Legal values range from 0 through 31, where a value of 0 represents the highest priority.



**preempt\_threshold** Highest priority level (0-31) of disabled preemption. Only priorities higher than this level are allowed to preempt this thread. This value must be less than or equal to the specified priority. A value equal to the thread priority disables preemption-threshold.

**time\_slice** Number of timer-ticks this thread is allowed to run before other ready threads of the same priority are given a chance to run. Note that using preemption-threshold disables time-slicing. Legal time-slices selections range from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF. A value of **TX\_NO\_TIME\_SLICE** (a value of 0) disables time-slicing of this thread.

***i** Using time-slicing results in a slight amount of system overhead. Since time-slicing is only useful in cases where multiple threads share the same priority, threads having a unique priority should not be assigned a time-slice.*

**auto\_start** Specifies whether the thread starts immediately or is placed in a suspended state. Legal options are **TX\_AUTO\_START** (0x01) and **TX\_DONT\_START** (0x00). If **TX\_DONT\_START** is specified, the application must later call `tx_thread_resume` in order for the thread to run.

## Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful thread creation.
<b>TX_THREAD_ERROR</b>	(0x0E)	Invalid thread control pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the thread is already created.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid starting address of the entry point or the stack area is invalid, usually NULL.
<b>TX_SIZE_ERROR</b>	(0x05)	Size of stack area is invalid. Threads must have at least <b>TX_MINIMUM_STACK</b> bytes to execute.
<b>TX_PRIORITY_ERROR</b>	(0x0F)	Invalid thread priority, which is a value outside the range of 0-31.
<b>TX_THRESH_ERROR</b>	(0x18)	Invalid preemption-threshold specified. This value must be a valid priority less than or equal to the initial priority of the thread.
<b>TX_START_ERROR</b>	(0x10)	Invalid auto-start selection.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization and threads

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```

TX_THREAD my_thread;
UINT status;

/* Create a thread of priority 15 whose entry point is
"my_thread_entry". This thread's stack area is 1000
bytes in size, starting at address 0x400000. The
preemption-threshold is setup to allow preemption at
priorities above 15. Time-slicing is disabled. This
thread is automatically put into a ready condition. */
status = tx_thread_create(&my_thread, "my_thread_name",
                          my_thread_entry, 0x1234,
                          (VOID *) 0x400000, 1000,
                          15, 15, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE,
                          TX_AUTO_START);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_thread is ready
for execution! */

...

/* Thread's entry function. When "my_thread" actually
begins execution, control is transferred to this
function. */
VOID my_thread_entry (ULONG initial_input)
{

    /* When we get here, the value of initial_input is
    0x1234. See how this was specified during
    creation. */

    /* The real work of the thread, including calls to
    other function should be called from here! */

    /* When the this function returns, the corresponding
    thread is placed into a "completed" state and
    suspended. */

}

```

## See Also

tx\_thread\_delete, tx\_thread\_identify, tx\_thread\_info\_get,  
 tx\_thread\_preemption\_change, tx\_thread\_priority\_change,  
 tx\_thread\_relinquish, tx\_thread\_resume, tx\_thread\_sleep,  
 tx\_thread\_suspend, tx\_thread\_terminate, tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change,  
 tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_delete

---

Delete an application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_delete(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr)
```

### Description

This service deletes the specified application thread. Since the specified thread must be in a terminated or completed state, this service cannot be called from a thread attempting to delete itself.

*i*

*It is the application's responsibility to manage the memory area associated with the thread's stack, which is available after this service completes. In addition, the application must prevent use of a deleted thread.*

### Input Parameters

**thread\_ptr**

Pointer to a previously created application thread.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful thread deletion.
<b>TX_THREAD_ERROR</b>	(0x0E)	Invalid application thread pointer.
<b>TX_DELETE_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Specified thread is not in a terminated or completed state.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads and timers

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
UINT status;

/* Delete an application thread whose control block is
   "my_thread". Assume that the thread has already been
   created with a call to tx_thread_create. */
status = tx_thread_delete(&my_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application thread is
   deleted. */
```

## See Also

tx\_thread\_create, tx\_thread\_identify, tx\_thread\_info\_get,  
tx\_thread\_preemption\_change, tx\_thread\_priority\_change,  
tx\_thread\_relinquish, tx\_thread\_resume, tx\_thread\_sleep,  
tx\_thread\_suspend, tx\_thread\_terminate, tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change,  
tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_identify

---

Retrieves pointer to currently executing thread

### Prototype

```
TX_THREAD* tx_thread_identify(VOID)
```

### Description

This service returns a pointer to the currently executing thread. If no thread is executing, this service returns a null pointer.

***i** If this service is called from an ISR, the return value represents the thread running prior to the executing interrupt handler.*

### Input Parameters

None

### Return Values

thread pointer

Pointer to the currently executing thread. If no thread is executing, the return value is TX\_NULL.

### Allowed From

Threads and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_THREAD *my_thread_ptr;

/* Find out who we are! */
my_thread_ptr = tx_thread_identify();

/* If my_thread_ptr is non-null, we are currently executing
   from that thread or an ISR that interrupted that thread.
   Otherwise, this service was called
   from an ISR when no thread was running when the
   interrupt occurred. */
```

## See Also

tx\_thread\_create, tx\_thread\_delete, tx\_thread\_info\_get,  
tx\_thread\_preemption\_change, tx\_thread\_priority\_change,  
tx\_thread\_relinquish, tx\_thread\_resume, tx\_thread\_sleep,  
tx\_thread\_suspend, tx\_thread\_terminate, tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change,  
tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

# tx\_thread\_info\_get

Retrieve information about a thread

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_info_get(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr, CHAR **name,
                        UINT *state, ULONG *run_count,
                        UINT *priority,
                        UINT *preemption_threshold,
                        ULONG *time_slice,
                        TX_THREAD **next_thread,
                        TX_THREAD **suspended_thread)
```

## Description

This service retrieves information about the specified thread.

## Input Parameters

<b>thread_ptr</b>	Pointer to thread control block.
<b>name</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread's name.
<b>state</b>	Pointer to destination for the thread's current execution state. Possible values are as follows: <div><div><div>TX_READY</div><div>TX_COMPLETED</div><div>TX_TERMINATED</div><div>TX_SUSPENDED</div><div>TX_SLEEP</div><div>TX_QUEUE_SUSP</div><div>TX_SEMAPHORE_SUSP</div><div>TX_EVENT_FLAG</div><div>TX_BLOCK_MEMORY</div><div>TX_BYTE_MEMORY</div><div>TX_MUTEX_SUSP</div><div>TX_IO_DRIVER</div></div><div><div>(0x00)</div><div>(0x01)</div><div>(0x02)</div><div>(0x03)</div><div>(0x04)</div><div>(0x05)</div><div>(0x06)</div><div>(0x07)</div><div>(0x08)</div><div>(0x09)</div><div>(0x0D)</div><div>(0x0A)</div></div></div>
<b>run_count</b>	Pointer to destination for the thread's run count.
<b>priority</b>	Pointer to destination for the thread's priority.
<b>preemption_threshold</b>	Pointer to destination for the thread's preemption-threshold.
<b>time_slice</b>	Pointer to destination for the thread's time-slice.



<b>next_thread</b>	Pointer to destination for next created thread pointer.
<b>suspended_thread</b>	Pointer to destination for pointer to next thread in suspension list.

## Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful thread information retrieval.
<b>TX_THREAD_ERROR</b>	(0x0E)	Invalid thread control pointer.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid pointer (NULL) for any destination pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```

TX_THREAD my_thread;
CHAR *name;
UINT state;
ULONG run_count;
UINT priority;
UINT preemption_threshold;
UINT time_slice;
TX_THREAD *next_thread;
TX_THREAD *suspended_thread;
UINT status;

/* Retrieve information about a the previously created
   thread "my_thread." */
status = tx_thread_info_get(&my_thread, &name,
                           &state, &run_count,
                           &priority, &preemption_threshold,
                           &time_slice, &next_thread, &suspended_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
   valid. */

```

**See Also**

tx\_thread\_create, tx\_thread\_delete, tx\_thread\_identify,  
tx\_thread\_preemption\_change, tx\_thread\_priority\_change,  
tx\_thread\_relinquish, tx\_thread\_resume, tx\_thread\_sleep,  
tx\_thread\_suspend, tx\_thread\_terminate, tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change,  
tx\_thread\_wait\_abort



## tx\_thread\_preemption\_change

Change preemption-threshold of application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_preemption_change(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
                                UINT new_threshold, UINT *old_threshold)
```

### Description

This service changes the preemption-threshold of the specified thread. The preemption-threshold prevents preemption of the specified thread by threads equal to or less than the preemption-threshold value.

*i* Note that using preemption-threshold disables time-slicing for the specified thread.

### Input Parameters

<b>thread_ptr</b>	Pointer to a previously created application thread.
<b>new_threshold</b>	New preemption-threshold priority level (0-31).
<b>old_threshold</b>	Pointer to a location to return the previous preemption-threshold.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful preemption-threshold change.
<b>TX_THREAD_ERROR</b>	(0x0E)	Invalid application thread pointer.
<b>TX_THRESH_ERROR</b>	(0x18)	Specified new preemption-threshold is not a valid thread priority (a value other than 0-31) or is greater than (lower priority) than the current thread priority.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid pointer to previous preemption-threshold storage location.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads and timers

## Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
UINT my_old_threshold;
UINT status;

/* Disable all preemption of the specified thread. The
   current preemption-threshold is returned in
   "my_old_threshold". Assume that "my_thread" has
   already been created. */
status = tx_thread_preemption_change(&my_thread,
                                     0, &my_old_threshold);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application thread is
   non-preemptable by another thread. Note that ISRs are
   not prevented by preemption disabling. */
```

### See Also

tx\_thread\_create, tx\_thread\_delete, tx\_thread\_identify,  
tx\_thread\_info\_get, tx\_thread\_priority\_change, tx\_thread\_relinquish,  
tx\_thread\_resume, tx\_thread\_sleep, tx\_thread\_suspend,  
tx\_thread\_terminate, tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change, tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_priority\_change

Change priority of an application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_priority_change(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
                               UINT new_priority, UINT *old_priority)
```

### Description

This service changes the priority of the specified thread. Valid priorities range from 0 through 31, where 0 represents the highest priority level.

**i**

*The preemption-threshold of the specified thread is automatically set to the new priority. If a new threshold is desired, the **tx\_thread\_preemption\_change** service must be used after this call.*

### Input Parameters

<b>thread_ptr</b>	Pointer to a previously created application thread.
<b>new_priority</b>	New thread priority level (0-31).
<b>old_priority</b>	Pointer to a location to return the thread's previous priority.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful priority change.
<b>TX_THREAD_ERROR</b>	(0x0E)	Invalid application thread pointer.
<b>TX_PRIORITY_ERROR</b>	(0x0F)	Specified new priority is not valid (a value other than 0-31).
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid pointer to previous priority storage location.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

**Allowed From**

Threads and timers

**Preemption Possible**

Yes

**Example**

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
UINT my_old_priority;
UINT status;

/* Change the thread represented by "my_thread" to priority
   0. */
status = tx_thread_priority_change(&my_thread,
                                   0, &my_old_priority);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application thread is
   now at the highest priority level in the system. */
```

**See Also**

tx\_thread\_create, tx\_thread\_delete, tx\_thread\_identify,  
tx\_thread\_info\_get, tx\_thread\_preemption\_change, tx\_thread\_relinquish,  
tx\_thread\_resume, tx\_thread\_sleep, tx\_thread\_suspend,  
tx\_thread\_terminate, tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change, tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_relinquish

---

Relinquish control to other application threads

### Prototype

```
VOID tx_thread_relinquish(VOID)
```

### Description

This service relinquishes processor control to other ready-to-run threads at the same or higher priority.

### Input Parameters

VOID

### Return Values

VOID

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes



## Example

```
ULONG run_counter_1 = 0;
ULONG run_counter_2 = 0;

/* Example of two threads relinquishing control to
each other in an infinite loop. Assume that
both of these threads are ready and have the same
priority. The run counters will always stay within one
of each other. */

VOID my_first_thread(ULONG thread_input)
{
    /* Endless loop of relinquish. */
    while(1)
    {
        /* Increment the run counter. */
        run_counter_1++;

        /* Relinquish control to other thread. */
        tx_thread_relinquish();
    }
}

VOID my_second_thread(ULONG thread_input)
{
    /* Endless loop of relinquish. */
    while(1)
    {
        /* Increment the run counter. */
        run_counter_2++;

        /* Relinquish control to other thread. */
        tx_thread_relinquish();
    }
}
```

## See Also

tx\_thread\_create, tx\_thread\_delete, tx\_thread\_identify,  
tx\_thread\_info\_get, tx\_thread\_preemption\_change,  
tx\_thread\_priority\_change, tx\_thread\_resume, tx\_thread\_sleep,  
tx\_thread\_suspend, tx\_thread\_terminate, tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change,  
tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_resume

---

Resume suspended application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_resume(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr)
```

### Description

This service resumes or prepares for execution a thread that was previously suspended by a **tx\_thread\_suspend** call. In addition, this service resumes threads that were created without an automatic start.

### Input Parameters

**thread\_ptr**                      Pointer to a suspended application thread.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful thread resume.
<b>TX_SUSPEND_LIFTED</b>	(0x19)	Previously set delayed suspension was lifted.
<b>TX_THREAD_ERROR</b>	(0x0E)	Invalid application thread pointer.
<b>TX_RESUME_ERROR</b>	(0x12)	Specified thread is not suspended or was previously suspended by a service other than <b>tx_thread_suspend</b> .

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
UINT status;

/* Resume the thread represented by "my_thread". */
status = tx_thread_resume(&my_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application thread is
   now ready to execute. */
```

## See Also

tx\_thread\_create, tx\_thread\_delete, tx\_thread\_identify,  
tx\_thread\_info\_get, tx\_thread\_preemption\_change,  
tx\_thread\_priority\_change, tx\_thread\_relinquish, tx\_thread\_sleep,  
tx\_thread\_suspend, tx\_thread\_terminate, tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change,  
tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_sleep

---

Suspended current thread for specified time

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_sleep(ULONG timer_ticks)
```

### Description

This service causes the calling thread to suspend for the specified number of timer ticks. The amount of physical time associated with a timer tick is application specific. This service can only be called only from an application thread.

### Input Parameters

<b>timer_ticks</b>	The number of timer ticks to suspend the calling application thread, ranging from 0 through 0xFFFFFFFF. If 0 is specified, the service returns immediately.
--------------------	---

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful thread sleep.
<b>TX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Service called from a non-thread.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
UINT status;

/* Make the calling thread sleep for 100
   timer-ticks. */
status = tx_thread_sleep(100);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the currently running
   application thread slept for the specified number of
   timer-ticks. */
```

## See Also

`tx_thread_create`, `tx_thread_delete`, `tx_thread_identify`,  
`tx_thread_info_get`, `tx_thread_preemption_change`,  
`tx_thread_priority_change`, `tx_thread_relinquish`, `tx_thread_resume`,  
`tx_thread_suspend`, `tx_thread_terminate`, `tx_thread_time_slice_change`,  
`tx_thread_wait_abort`

# tx\_thread\_suspend

Suspend an application thread

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_suspend(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr)
```

## Description

This service suspends the specified application thread. A thread may call this service to suspend itself.

*If the specified thread is already suspended for another reason, this suspension is held internally until the prior suspension is lifted. When that happens, this unconditional suspension of the specified thread is performed. Further unconditional suspension requests have no effect.*

Once suspended, the thread must be resumed by **tx\_thread\_resume** in order to execute again.

## Input Parameters

**thread\_ptr**                      Pointer to an application thread.

## Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful thread suspend.
<b>TX_THREAD_ERROR</b>	(0x0E)	Invalid application thread pointer.
<b>TX_SUSPEND_ERROR</b>	(0x14)	Specified thread is in a terminated or completed state.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads and timers

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
UINT status;

/* Suspend the thread represented by "my_thread". */
status = tx_thread_suspend(&my_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application thread is
   unconditionally suspended. */
```

## See Also

`tx_thread_create`, `tx_thread_delete`, `tx_thread_identify`,  
`tx_thread_info_get`, `tx_thread_preemption_change`,  
`tx_thread_priority_change`, `tx_thread_relinquish`, `tx_thread_resume`,  
`tx_thread_sleep`, `tx_thread_terminate`, `tx_thread_time_slice_change`,  
`tx_thread_wait_abort`

## tx\_thread\_terminate

---

Terminates an application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_terminate(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr)
```

### Description

This service terminates the specified application thread regardless of whether the thread is suspended or not. A thread may call this service to terminate itself.

*i* Once terminated, the thread must be deleted and re-created in order for it to execute again.

*i* Note that time-slicing is disabled when using preemption-threshold to prevent preemption of higher-priority threads.

### Input Parameters

**thread\_ptr**                      Pointer to application thread.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful thread terminate.
<b>TX_THREAD_ERROR</b>	(0x0E)	Invalid application thread pointer.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads and timers

### Preemption Possible

Yes



## Example

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
UINT status;

/* Terminate the thread represented by "my_thread". */
status = tx_thread_terminate(&my_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the thread is terminated
and cannot execute again until it is deleted and
re-created. */
```

## See Also

tx\_thread\_create, tx\_thread\_delete, tx\_thread\_identify,  
tx\_thread\_info\_get, tx\_thread\_preemption\_change,  
tx\_thread\_priority\_change, tx\_thread\_relinquish, tx\_thread\_resume,  
tx\_thread\_sleep, tx\_thread\_suspend, tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change,  
tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change

Changes time-slice of application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_time_slice_change(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
                                ULONG new_time_slice, ULONG *old_time_slice)
```

### Description

This service changes the time-slice of the specified application thread. Selecting a time-slice for a thread insures that it won't execute more than the specified number of timer ticks before other threads of the same or higher priorities have a chance to execute.

*i* Note that using *preemption-threshold* disables time-slicing for the specified thread.

### Input Parameters

<b>thread_ptr</b>	Pointer to application thread.
<b>new_time_slice</b>	New time slice value. Legal values include TX_NO_TIME_SLICE and numeric values from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF.
<b>old_time_slice</b>	Pointer to location for storing the previous time-slice value of the specified thread.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful time-slice change.
<b>TX_THREAD_ERROR</b>	(0x0E)	Invalid application thread pointer.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid pointer to previous time-slice storage location.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

**Allowed From**

Threads and timers

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
TX_THREAD    my_thread;
ULONG        my_old_time_slice;
UINT         status;

/* Change the time-slice of the thread associated with
   "my_thread" to 20. This will mean that "my_thread"
   can only run for 20 timer-ticks consecutively before
   other threads of equal or higher priority get a chance
   to run. */
status = tx_thread_time_slice_change(&my_thread, 20,
                                     &my_old_time_slice);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the thread's time-slice
   has been changed to 20 and the previous time-slice is
   in "my_old_time_slice." */
```

**See Also**

tx\_thread\_create, tx\_thread\_delete, tx\_thread\_identify,  
tx\_thread\_info\_get, tx\_thread\_preemption\_change,  
tx\_thread\_priority\_change, tx\_thread\_relinquish, tx\_thread\_resume,  
tx\_thread\_sleep, tx\_thread\_suspend, tx\_thread\_terminate,  
tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

# tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

Abort suspension of specified thread

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_wait_abort(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr)
```

## Description

This service aborts sleep or any other object suspension of the specified thread. If the wait is aborted, a TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED value is returned from the service that the thread was waiting on.

*i* Note that this service does not release pure suspension that is made by the tx\_thread\_suspend service.

## Input Parameters

**thread\_ptr**                      Pointer to a previously created application thread.

## Return Values

TX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful thread wait abort.
TX_THREAD_ERROR	(0x0E)	Invalid application thread pointer.
TX_WAIT_ABORT_ERROR	(0x1B)	Specified thread is not in a waiting state.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
UINT status;

/* Abort the suspension condition of "my_thread." */
status = tx_thread_wait_abort(&my_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the thread is now ready
   again, with a return value showing its suspension
   was aborted (TX_WAIT_ABORTED). */
```

## See Also

tx\_thread\_create, tx\_thread\_delete, tx\_thread\_identify,  
tx\_thread\_info\_get, tx\_thread\_preemption\_change,  
tx\_thread\_priority\_change, tx\_thread\_relinquish, tx\_thread\_resume,  
tx\_thread\_sleep, tx\_thread\_suspend, tx\_thread\_terminate,  
tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change

## tx\_time\_get

---

Retrieves the current time

### Prototype

```
ULONG tx_time_get(VOID)
```

### Description

This service returns the contents of the internal system clock. Each timer-tick increases the internal system clock by one. The system clock is set to zero during initialization and can be changed to a specific value by the service **tx\_time\_set**.

*i* The actual time each timer-tick represents is application specific.

### Input Parameters

None

### Return Values

system clock ticks      Value of the internal, free running, system clock.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
ULONG current_time;

/* Pickup the current system time, in timer-ticks. */
current_time = tx_time_get();

/* Current time now contains a copy of the internal system
   clock. */
```

## See Also

tx\_time\_set

## tx\_time\_set

---

Sets the current time

### Prototype

```
VOID tx_time_set(ULONG new_time)
```

### Description

This service sets the internal system clock to the specified value. Each timer-tick increases the internal system clock by one.

*i* | The actual time each timer-tick represents is application specific.

### Input Parameters

new\_time

New time to put in the system clock, legal values range from 0 through 0xFFFFFFFF.

### Return Values

None

### Allowed From

Threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No



## Example

```
/* Set the internal system time to 0x1234. */  
tx_time_set(0x1234);  
/* Current time now contains 0x1234 until the next timer  
interrupt. */
```

## See Also

`tx_time_get`

# tx\_timer\_activate

---

Activate an application timer

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_activate(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr)
```

## Description

This service activates the specified application timer. The expiration routines of timers that expire at the same time are executed in the order they were activated.

## Input Parameters

**timer\_ptr**                      Pointer to a previously created application timer.

## Return Values

TX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful application timer activation.
TX_TIMER_ERROR	(0x15)	Invalid application timer pointer.
TX_ACTIVATE_ERROR	(0x17)	Timer was already active.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_TIMER my_timer;
UINT status;

/* Activate an application timer. Assume that the
   application timer has already been created. */
status = tx_timer_activate(&my_timer);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application timer is
   now active. */
```

## See Also

`tx_timer_change`, `tx_timer_create`, `tx_timer_deactivate`, `tx_timer_delete`,  
`tx_timer_info_get`

## tx\_timer\_change

---

Change an application timer

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_change(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr,
                    ULONG initial_ticks, ULONG reschedule_ticks)
```

### Description

This service changes the expiration characteristics of the specified application timer. The timer must be deactivated prior to calling this service.

*i* A call to the **tx\_timer\_activate** service is required after this service in order to start the timer again.

### Input Parameters

<b>timer_ptr</b>	Pointer to a timer control block.
<b>initial_ticks</b>	Specifies the initial number of ticks for timer expiration. Legal values range from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF.
<b>reschedule_ticks</b>	Specifies the number of ticks for all timer expirations after the first. A zero for this parameter makes the timer a <i>one-shot</i> timer. Otherwise, for periodic timers, legal values range from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful application timer change.
<b>TX_TIMER_ERROR</b>	(0x15)	Invalid application timer pointer.
<b>TX_TICK_ERROR</b>	(0x16)	Invalid value (a zero) supplied for initial ticks.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

**Allowed From**

Threads, timers, and ISRs

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
TX_TIMER my_timer;
UINT status;

/* Change a previously created and now deactivated timer
   to expire every 50 timer ticks, including the initial
   expiration. */
status = tx_timer_change(&my_timer, 50, 50);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the specified timer is
   changed to expire every 50 ticks. */

/* Activate the specified timer to get it started again. */
status = tx_timer_activate(&my_timer);
```

**See Also**

tx\_timer\_activate, tx\_timer\_create, tx\_timer\_deactivate, tx\_timer\_delete,  
tx\_timer\_info\_get

## tx\_timer\_create

Create an application timer

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_create(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr, CHAR *name_ptr,
                    VOID (*expiration_function)(ULONG),
                    ULONG expiration_input, ULONG initial_ticks,
                    ULONG reschedule_ticks, UINT auto_activate)
```

### Description

This service creates an application timer with the specified expiration function and periodic.

### Input Parameters

<b>timer_ptr</b>	Pointer to a timer control block
<b>name_ptr</b>	Pointer to the name of the timer.
<b>expiration_function</b>	Application function to call when the timer expires.
<b>expiration_input</b>	Input to pass to expiration function when timer expires.
<b>initial_ticks</b>	Specifies the initial number of ticks for timer expiration. Legal values range from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF.
<b>reschedule_ticks</b>	Specifies the number of ticks for all timer expirations after the first. A zero for this parameter makes the timer a <i>one-shot</i> timer. Otherwise, for periodic timers, legal values range from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF.
<b>auto_activate</b>	Determines if the timer is automatically activated during creation. If this value is <b>TX_AUTO_ACTIVATE</b> (0x01) the timer is made active. Otherwise, if the value <b>TX_NO_ACTIVATE</b> (0x00) is selected, the timer is created in a non-active state. In this case, a subsequent <b>tx_timer_activate</b> service call is necessary to get the timer actually started.

## Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful application timer creation.
<b>TX_TIMER_ERROR</b>	(0x15)	Invalid application timer pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the timer is already created.
<b>TX_TICK_ERROR</b>	(0x16)	Invalid value (a zero) supplied for initial ticks.
<b>TX_ACTIVATE_ERROR</b>	(0x17)	Invalid activation selected.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization and threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_TIMER my_timer;
UINT status;

/* Create an application timer that executes
"my_timer_function" after 100 ticks initially and then
after every 25 ticks. This timer is specified to start
immediately! */
status = tx_timer_create(&my_timer, "my_timer_name",
                        my_timer_function, 0x1234, 100, 25,
                        TX_AUTO_ACTIVATE);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_timer_function will
be called 100 timer ticks later and then called every
25 timer ticks. Note that the value 0x1234 is passed to
my_timer_function every time it is called. */
```

## See Also

tx\_timer\_activate, tx\_timer\_change, tx\_timer\_deactivate, tx\_timer\_delete, tx\_timer\_info\_get

# tx\_timer\_deactivate

---

Deactivate an application timer

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_deactivate(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr)
```

## Description

This service deactivates the specified application timer. If the timer is already deactivated, this service has no effect.

## Input Parameters

**timer\_ptr**                      Pointer to a previously created application timer.

## Return Values

- |                       |        |  |
|-----------------------|--------|--|
| <b>TX_SUCCESS</b>     | (0x00) | Successful application timer deactivation. |
| <b>TX_TIMER_ERROR</b> | (0x15) | Invalid application timer pointer.         |

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No



## Example

```
TX_TIMER my_timer;
UINT status;

/* Deactivate an application timer. Assume that the
   application timer has already been created. */
status = tx_timer_deactivate(&my_timer);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application timer is
   now deactivated. */
```

## See Also

`tx_timer_activate`, `tx_timer_change`, `tx_timer_create`, `tx_timer_delete`,  
`tx_timer_info_get`

## tx\_timer\_delete

---

Delete an application timer

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_delete(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr)
```

### Description

This service deletes the specified application timer.

*i* It is the application's responsibility to prevent use of a deleted timer.

### Input Parameters

<b>timer_ptr</b>	Pointer to a previously created application timer.
------------------	--

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful application timer deletion.
<b>TX_TIMER_ERROR</b>	(0x15)	Invalid application timer pointer.
<b>TX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x13)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_TIMER my_timer;
UINT status;

/* Delete application timer. Assume that the application
   timer has already been created. */
status = tx_timer_delete(&my_timer);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application timer is
   deleted. */
```

## See Also

`tx_timer_activate`, `tx_timer_change`, `tx_timer_create`, `tx_timer_deactivate`,  
`tx_timer_info_get`

## tx\_timer\_info\_get

Retrieve information about an application timer

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_info_get(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr, CHAR **name,
                      UINT *active, ULONG *remaining_ticks,
                      ULONG *reschedule_ticks,
                      TX_TIMER **next_timer)
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about the specified application timer.

### Input Parameters

<b>timer_ptr</b>	Pointer to a previously created application timer.
<b>name</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer to the timer's name.
<b>active</b>	Pointer to destination for the timer active indication. If the timer is inactive or this service is called from the timer itself, a TX_FALSE value is returned. Otherwise, if the timer is active, a TX_TRUE value is returned.
<b>remaining_ticks</b>	Pointer to destination for the number of timer ticks left before the timer expires.
<b>reschedule_ticks</b>	Pointer to destination for the number of timer ticks that will be used to automatically reschedule this timer. If the value is zero, then the timer is a one-shot and won't be rescheduled.
<b>next_timer</b>	Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created application timer.

### Return Values

<b>TX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful timer information retrieval.
<b>TX_TIMER_ERROR</b>	(0x15)	Invalid application timer pointer.
<b>TX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x03)	Invalid pointer (NULL) for any destination pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_TIMER my_timer;
CHAR *name;
UINT active;
ULONG remaining_ticks;
ULONG reschedule_ticks;
TX_TIMER *next_timer;
UINT status;

/* Retrieve information about a the previously created
   application timer "my_timer." */
status = tx_timer_info_get(&my_timer, &name,
                           &active, &remaining_ticks,
                           &reschedule_ticks,
                           &next_timer);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
   valid. */
```

## See Also

tx\_timer\_activate, tx\_timer\_change, tx\_timer\_create, tx\_timer\_deactivate,  
tx\_timer\_delete, tx\_timer\_info\_get



T H R E A D X

## ***I/O Drivers for ThreadX***

---

This chapter contains a description of I/O drivers for ThreadX. The information presented in this chapter is designed to help developers write application specific drivers. The following lists the I/O driver topics covered in this chapter:

- I/O Driver Introduction 224
- Driver Functions 224
  - Driver Initialization 225
  - Driver Control 225
  - Driver Access 225
  - Driver Input 225
  - Driver Output 225
  - Driver Interrupts 226
  - Driver Status 226
  - Driver Termination 226
- Simple Driver Example 226
  - Simple Driver Initialization 226
  - Simple Driver Input 228
  - Simple Driver Output 229
  - Simple Driver Shortcomings 230
- Advanced Driver Issues 231
  - I/O Buffering 231
  - Circular Byte Buffers 231
  - Circular Buffer Input 231
  - Circular Output Buffer 233
  - Buffer I/O Management 234
  - TX\_IO\_BUFFER 234
  - Buffered I/O Advantage 235
  - Buffered Driver Responsibilities 235
  - Interrupt Management 237
  - Thread Suspension 237

## I/O Driver Introduction

Communication with the external environment is an important component of most embedded applications. This communication is accomplished through hardware devices that are accessible to the embedded application software. The software components responsible for managing such devices are commonly called *I/O Drivers*.

I/O drivers in embedded, real-time systems are inherently application dependent. This is true for two principal reasons: the vast diversity of target hardware and the equally vast performance requirements imposed on real-time applications. Because of this, it is virtually impossible to provide a common set of drivers that will meet the requirements of every application. For these reasons, the information in this chapter is designed to help users customize *off-the-shelf* ThreadX I/O drivers and write their own specific drivers.

## Driver Functions

ThreadX I/O drivers are composed of eight basic functional areas, as follows:

- Driver Initialization**
- Driver Control**
- Driver Access**
- Driver Input**
- Driver Output**
- Driver Interrupts**
- Driver Status**
- Driver Termination**

With the exception of initialization, each driver functional area is optional. Furthermore, the exact processing in each area is specific to the I/O driver.



## Driver Initialization

This functional area is responsible for initialization of the actual hardware device and the internal data structures of the driver. Calling other driver services is not allowed until initialization is complete.

*i*

*The driver's initialization function component is typically called from the **tx\_application\_define** function or from an initialization thread.*

## Driver Control

After the driver is initialized and ready for operation, this functional area is responsible for run-time control. Typically, run-time control consists of making changes to the underlying hardware device. Examples include changing the baud rate of a serial device or seeking a new sector on a disk.

## Driver Access

Some I/O drivers are called only from a single application thread. In such cases, this functional area is not needed. However, in applications where multiple threads need simultaneous driver access, their interaction must be controlled by adding assign/release facilities in the I/O driver. Alternatively, the application may use a semaphore to control driver access and avoid extra overhead and complication inside the driver.

## Driver Input

This functional area is responsible for all device input. The principle issues associated with driver input usually involve how the input is buffered and how threads wait for such input.

## Driver Output

This functional area is responsible for all device output. The principle issues associated with driver output usually involve how the output is buffered and how threads wait to perform output.

## Driver Interrupts

Most real-time systems rely on hardware interrupts to notify the driver of device input, output, control, and error events. Interrupts provide a guaranteed response time to such external events. Instead of interrupts, the driver software may periodically check the external hardware for such events. This technique is called *polling*. It is less real-time than interrupts, but polling may make sense for some less real-time applications.

## Driver Status

This function area is responsible for providing run-time status and statistics associated with the driver operation. Information managed by this function area typically includes the following:

- Current device status
- Input bytes
- Output bytes
- I/O error counts

## Driver Termination

This functional area is optional. It is only required if the driver and/or the physical hardware device need to be shut down. After terminated, the driver must not be called again until it is re-initialized.

# Simple Driver Example

An example is the best way to describe an I/O driver. In this example, the driver assumes a simple serial hardware device with a configuration register, an input register, and an output register. This simple driver example illustrates the initialization, input, output, and interrupt functional areas.

## Simple Driver Initialization

The ***tx\_sdriver\_initialize*** function of the simple driver creates two counting semaphores that are

used to manage the driver's input and output operation. The input semaphore is set by the input ISR when a character is received by the serial hardware device. Because of this, the input semaphore is created with an initial count of zero.

Conversely, the output semaphore indicates the availability of the serial hardware transmit register. It is created with a value of one to indicate the transmit register is initially available.

The initialization function is also responsible for installing the low-level interrupt vector handlers for input and output notifications. Like other ThreadX interrupt service routines, the low-level handler must call **`_tx_thread_context_save`** before calling the simple driver ISR. After the driver ISR returns, the low-level handler must call **`_tx_thread_context_restore`**.

***i***

*It is important that initialization is called before any of the other driver functions. Typically, driver initialization is called from **`tx_application_define`**.*

See Figure 9 on page 228 for the initialization source code of the simple driver.

```

VOID    tx_sdriver_initialize(VOID)
{
    /* Initialize the two counting semaphores used to control
       the simple driver I/O. */
    tx_semaphore_create(&tx_sdriver_input_semaphore,
                       "simple driver input semaphore", 0);
    tx_semaphore_create(&tx_sdriver_output_semaphore,
                       "simple driver output semaphore", 1);

    /* Setup interrupt vectors for input and output ISRs.
       The initial vector handling should call the ISRs
       defined in this file. */

    /* Configure serial device hardware for RX/TX interrupt
       generation, baud rate, stop bits, etc. */
}

```

FIGURE 9. Simple Driver Initialization

## Simple Driver Input

Input for the simple driver centers around the input semaphore. When a serial device input interrupt is received, the input semaphore is set. If one or more threads are waiting for a character from the driver, the thread waiting the longest is resumed. If no threads are waiting, the semaphore simply remains set until a thread calls the drive input function.

There are several limitations to the simple driver input handling. The most significant is the potential for dropping input characters. This is possible because there is no ability to buffer input characters that arrive before the previous character is processed. This is easily handled by adding an input character buffer.

*i* Only threads are allowed to call the **tx\_sdriver\_input** function.

Figure 10 shows the source code associated with simple driver input.

```
UCHAR    tx_sdriver_input(VOID)
{
    /* Determine if there is a character waiting. If not,
       suspend. */
    tx_semaphore_get(&tx_sdriver_input_semaphore,
                    TX_WAIT_FOREVER;
    /* Return character from serial RX hardware register. */
    return(*serial_hardware_input_ptr);
}

VOID      tx_sdriver_input_ISR(VOID)
{
    /* See if an input character notification is pending. */
    if (!tx_sdriver_input_semaphore.tx_semaphore_count)
    {
        /* If not, notify thread of an input character. */
        tx_semaphore_put(&tx_sdriver_input_semaphore);
    }
}
```

**FIGURE 10. Simple Driver Input**

## Simple Driver Output

Output processing utilizes the output semaphore to signal when the serial device's transmit register is free. Before an output character is actually written to the device, the output semaphore is obtained. If it is not available, the previous transmit is not yet complete.

The output ISR is responsible for handling the transmit complete interrupt. Processing of the output ISR amounts to setting the output semaphore, thereby allowing output of another character.

**i** Only threads are allowed to call the **tx\_sdriver\_output** function.

Figure 11 shows the source code associated with simple driver output.

```

VOID    tx_sdriver_output( UCHAR alpha)
{
    /* Determine if the hardware is ready to transmit a
       character. If not, suspend until the previous output
       completes. */
    tx_semaphore_get(&tx_sdriver_output_semaphore,
                    TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
    /* Send the character through the hardware. */
    *serial_hardware_output_ptr = alpha;
}

VOID    tx_sdriver_output_ISR(VOID)
{
    /* Notify thread last character transmit is
       complete. */
    tx_semaphore_put(&tx_sdriver_output_semaphore);
}

```

**FIGURE 11. Simple Driver Output**

## Simple Driver Shortcomings

This simple I/O driver example illustrates the basic idea of a ThreadX device driver. However, because the simple I/O driver does not address data buffering or any overhead issues, it does not fully represent real-world ThreadX drivers. The following section describes some of the more advanced issues associated with I/O drivers.

## Advanced Driver Issues

As mentioned previously, I/O drivers have requirements as unique as their applications. Some applications may require an enormous amount of data buffering while another application may require optimized driver ISRs because of high-frequency device interrupts.

### I/O Buffering

Data buffering in real-time embedded applications requires considerable planning. Some of the design is dictated by the underlying hardware device. If the device provides basic byte I/O, a simple circular buffer is probably in order. However, if the device provides block, DMA, or packet I/O, a buffer management scheme is probably warranted.

### Circular Byte Buffers

Circular byte buffers are typically used in drivers that manage a simple serial hardware device like a UART. Two circular buffers are most often used in such situations—one for input and one for output.

Each circular byte buffer is comprised of a byte memory area (typically an array of UCHARs), a read pointer, and a write pointer. A buffer is considered empty when the read pointer and the write pointers reference the same memory location in the buffer. Driver initialization sets both the read and write buffer pointers to the beginning address of the buffer.

### Circular Buffer Input

The input buffer is used to hold characters that arrive before the application is ready for them. When an input character is received (usually in an interrupt service routine), the new character is retrieved from the hardware device and placed into the input buffer at the location pointed to by the write pointer. The write pointer is then advanced to the next position in

the buffer. If the next position is past the end of the buffer, the write pointer is set to the beginning of the buffer. The queue full condition is handled by cancelling the write pointer advancement if the new write pointer is the same as the read pointer.

Application input byte requests to the driver first examine the read and write pointers of the input buffer. If the read and write pointers are identical, the buffer is empty. Otherwise, if the read pointer is not the same, the byte pointed to by the read pointer is copied from the input buffer and the read pointer is advanced to the next buffer location. If the new read pointer is past the end of the buffer, it is reset to the beginning. Figure 12 shows the logic for the circular input buffer.

```

UCHAR    tx_input_buffer[MAX_SIZE];
UCHAR    tx_input_write_ptr;
UCHAR    tx_input_read_ptr;

/* Initialization. */
tx_input_write_ptr = &tx_input_buffer[0];
tx_input_read_ptr = &tx_input_buffer[0];

/* Input byte ISR... UCHAR alpha has character from device. */
save_ptr = tx_input_write_ptr;
*tx_input_write_ptr++ = alpha;
if (tx_input_write_ptr > &tx_input_buffer[MAX_SIZE-1])
    tx_input_write_ptr = &tx_input_buffer[0]; /* Wrap */
if (tx_input_write_ptr == tx_input_read_ptr)
    tx_input_write_ptr = save_ptr; /* Buffer full */

/* Retrieve input byte from buffer... */
if (tx_input_read_ptr != tx_input_write_ptr)
{
    alpha = *tx_input_read_ptr++;
    if (tx_input_read_ptr > &tx_input_buffer[MAX_SIZE-1])
        tx_input_read_ptr = &tx_input_buffer[0];
}

```

**FIGURE 12. Logic for Circular Input Buffer**



**i** For reliable operation, it may be necessary to lockout interrupts when manipulating the read and write pointers of both the input and output circular buffers.

## Circular Output Buffer

The output buffer is used to hold characters that have arrived for output before the hardware device finished sending the previous byte. Output buffer processing is similar to input buffer processing, except the transmit complete interrupt processing manipulates the output read pointer, while the application output request utilizes the output write pointer. Otherwise, the output buffer processing is the same. Figure 13 shows the logic for the circular output buffer.

```

UCHAR    tx_output_buffer[MAX_SIZE];
UCHAR    tx_output_write_ptr;
UCHAR    tx_output_read_ptr;

/* Initialization. */
tx_output_write_ptr = &tx_output_buffer[0];
tx_output_read_ptr = &tx_output_buffer[0];

/* Transmit complete ISR... Device ready to send. */
if (tx_output_read_ptr != tx_output_write_ptr)
{
    *device_reg = *tx_output_read_ptr++;
    if (tx_output_read_ptr > &tx_output_buffer[MAX_SIZE-1])
        tx_output_read_ptr = &tx_output_buffer[0];
}

/* Output byte driver service. If device busy, buffer! */
save_ptr = tx_output_write_ptr;
*tx_output_write_ptr++ = alpha;
if (tx_output_write_ptr > &tx_output_buffer[MAX_SIZE-1])
    tx_output_write_ptr = &tx_output_buffer[0]; /* Wrap */
if (tx_output_write_ptr == tx_output_read_ptr)
    tx_output_write_ptr = save_ptr; /* Buffer full! */

```

**FIGURE 13. Logic for Circular Output Buffer**

## Buffer I/O Management

To improve the performance of embedded microprocessors, many peripheral I/O devices transmit and receive data with buffers supplied by software. In some implementations, multiple buffers may be used to transmit or receive individual packets of data.

The size and location of I/O buffers is determined by the application and/or driver software. Typically, buffers are fixed in size and managed within a ThreadX block memory pool. Figure 14 describes a typical I/O buffer and a ThreadX block memory pool that manages their allocation.

```
typedef struct TX_IO_BUFFER_STRUCT
{
    struct TX_IO_BUFFER_STRUCT *tx_next_packet;
    struct TX_IO_BUFFER_STRUCT *tx_next_buffer;
    UCHAR tx_buffer_area[TX_MAX_BUFFER_SIZE];
} TX_IO_BUFFER;

TX_BLOCK_POOL tx_io_block_pool;

/* Create a pool of I/O buffers. Assume that the pointer
"free_memory_ptr" points to an available memory area that
is 64KBytes in size. */
tx_block_pool_create(&tx_io_block_pool,
    "Sample IO Driver Buffer Pool",
    free_memory_ptr, 0x10000,
    sizeof(TX_IO_BUFFER));
```

**FIGURE 14. I/O Buffer**

### TX\_IO\_BUFFER

The typedef TX\_IO\_BUFFER consists of two pointers. The ***tx\_next\_packet*** pointer is used to link multiple packets on either the input or output list. The

***tx\_next\_buffer*** pointer is used to link together buffers that make up an individual packet of data from the device. Both of these pointers are set to NULL when the buffer is allocated from the pool. In addition, some devices may require another field to indicate how much of the buffer area actually contains data.

## Buffered I/O Advantage

What are the advantages of a buffer I/O scheme? The biggest advantage is that data is not copied between the device registers and the application's memory. Instead, the driver provides the device with a series of buffer pointers. Physical device I/O utilizes the supplied buffer memory directly.

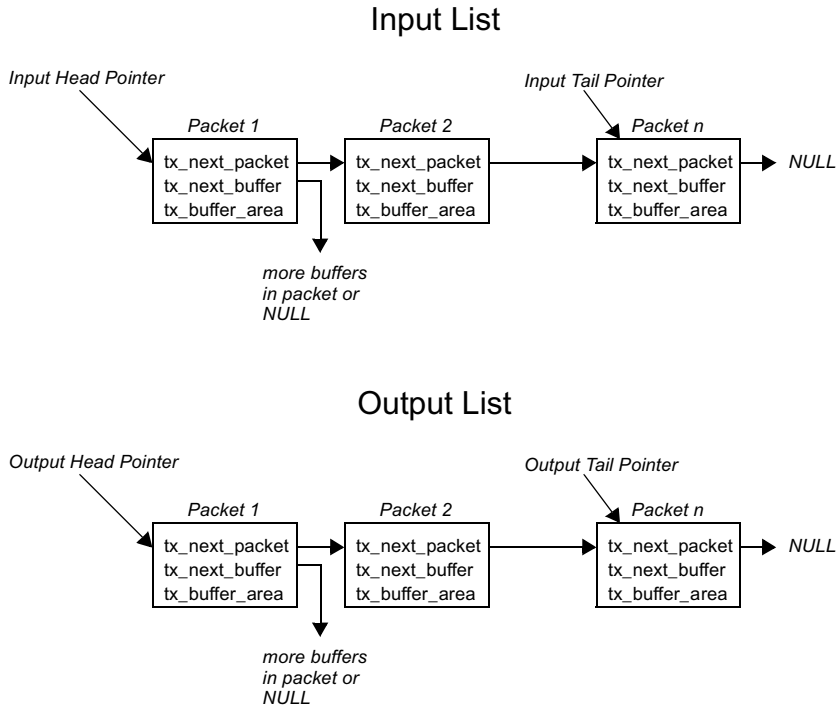
Using the processor to copy input or output packets of information is extremely costly and should be avoided in any high throughput I/O situation.

Another advantage to the buffered I/O approach is that the input and output lists do not have full conditions. All of the available buffers can be on either list at any one time. This contrasts with the simple byte circular buffers presented earlier in the chapter. Each had a fixed size determined at compilation.

## Buffered Driver Responsibilities

Buffered I/O drivers are only concerned with managing linked lists of I/O buffers. An input buffer list is maintained for packets that are received before the application software is ready. Conversely, an output buffer list is maintained for packets being sent faster than the hardware device can handle them. Figure 15 on page 236 shows simple input and

output linked lists of data packets and the buffer(s) that make up each packet.



**FIGURE 15. Input-Output Lists**

Applications interface with buffered drivers with the same I/O buffers. On transmit, application software provides the driver with one or more buffers to transmit. When the application software requests input, the driver returns the input data in I/O buffers.

*i* In some applications, it may be useful to build a driver input interface that requires the application to exchange a free buffer for an input buffer from the

*driver. This might alleviate some buffer allocation processing inside of the driver.*

## **Interrupt Management**

In some applications, the device interrupt frequency may prohibit writing the ISR in C or to interact with ThreadX on each interrupt. For example, if it takes 25us to save and restore the interrupted context, it would not be advisable to perform a full context save if the interrupt frequency was 50us. In such cases, a small assembly language ISR is used to handle most of the device interrupts. This low-overhead ISR would only interact with ThreadX when necessary.

A similar discussion can be found in the interrupt management discussion at the end of Chapter 3.

## **Thread Suspension**

In the simple driver example presented earlier in this chapter, the caller of the input service suspends if a character is not available. In some applications, this might not be acceptable.

For example, if the thread responsible for processing input from a driver also has other duties, suspending on just the driver input is probably not going to work. Instead, the driver needs to be customized to request processing similar to the way other processing requests are made to the thread.

In most cases, the input buffer is placed on a linked list and an “input event” message is sent to the thread’s input queue.



T H R E A D X

# ***Demonstration System for ThreadX***

---

This chapter contains a description of the demonstration system that is delivered with all ThreadX processor support packages. The following lists specific demonstration areas that are covered in this chapter:

- Overview 240
- Application Define 240
- Thread 0 242
- Thread 1 242
- Thread 2 242
- Threads 3 and 4 243
- Thread 5 243
- Threads 6 and 7 244
- Observing the Demonstration 244
- Distribution file: demo.c 245

## Overview

Each ThreadX product distribution contains a demonstration system that runs on all supported microprocessors.

This example system is defined in the distribution file **demo.c** and is designed to illustrate how ThreadX is used in an embedded multi-thread environment. The demonstration consists of initialization, eight threads, one byte pool, one block pool, one queue, one semaphore, one mutex, and one event flag group.

*i*

*It is worthwhile to mention that—except for the thread's stack size—the demonstration application is identical on all ThreadX supported processors.*

The complete listing of **demo.c**, including the line numbers referenced throughout the remainder of this chapter, is displayed on page 246 and following.

## Application Define

The **tx\_application\_define** function executes after the basic ThreadX initialization is complete. It is responsible for setting up all of the initial system resources, including threads, queues, semaphores, mutexes, event flags, and memory pools.

The demonstration system's **tx\_application\_define** (line numbers 60-164) creates the demonstration objects in the following order:

```
byte_pool_0  
thread_0  
thread_1  
thread_2  
thread_3  
thread_4  
thread_5  
thread_6
```



```
thread_7  
queue_0  
semaphore_0  
event_flags_0  
mutex_0  
block_pool_0
```

The demonstration system does not create any other additional ThreadX objects. However, an actual application may create system objects during run-time inside of executing threads.

## Initial Execution

All threads are created with the **TX\_AUTO\_START** option. This makes them initially ready for execution. After **tx\_application\_define** completes, control is transferred to the thread scheduler and from there to each individual thread.

The order in which the threads execute is determined by their priority and the order that they were created. In the demonstration system, **thread\_0** executes first because it has the highest priority (*it was created with a priority of 1*). After **thread\_0** suspends, **thread\_5** is executed, followed by the execution of **thread\_3**, **thread\_4**, **thread\_6**, **thread\_7**, **thread\_1**, and finally **thread\_2**.

**i** Notice that even though **thread\_3** and **thread\_4** have the same priority (both created with a priority of 8), **thread\_3** executes first. This is because **thread\_3** was created and became ready before **thread\_4**. Threads of equal priority execute in a FIFO fashion.

## Thread 0

The function ***thread\_0\_entry*** marks the entry point of the thread (*lines 167-190*). ***Thread\_0*** is the first thread in the demonstration system to execute. Its processing is simple: it increments its counter, sleeps for 10 timer ticks, sets an event flag to wake up ***thread\_5***, then repeats the sequence.

***Thread\_0*** is the highest priority thread in the system. When its requested sleep expires, it will preempt any other executing thread in the demonstration.

## Thread 1

The function ***thread\_1\_entry*** marks the entry point of the thread (*lines 193-216*). ***Thread\_1*** is the second-to-last thread in the demonstration system to execute. Its processing consists of incrementing its counter, sending a message to ***thread\_2*** (*through queue\_0*), and repeating the sequence. Notice that ***thread\_1*** suspends whenever ***queue\_0*** becomes full (*line 207*).

## Thread 2

The function ***thread\_2\_entry*** marks the entry point of the thread (*lines 219-243*). ***Thread\_2*** is the last thread in the demonstration system to execute. Its processing consists of incrementing its counter, getting a message from ***thread\_1*** (*through queue\_0*), and repeating the sequence. Notice that ***thread\_2*** suspends whenever ***queue\_0*** becomes empty (*line 233*).

Although ***thread\_1*** and ***thread\_2*** share the lowest priority in the demonstration system (*priority 16*), they

are also the only threads that are ready for execution most of the time. They are also the only threads created with time-slicing (*lines 74 and 82*). Each thread is allowed to execute for a maximum of 4 timer ticks before the other thread is executed.

## Threads 3 and 4

The function ***thread\_3\_and\_4\_entry*** marks the entry point of both ***thread\_3*** and ***thread\_4*** (*lines 246-280*). Both threads have a priority of 8, which makes them the third and fourth threads in the demonstration system to execute. The processing for each thread is the same: incrementing its counter, getting ***semaphore\_0***, sleeping for 2 timer ticks, releasing ***semaphore\_0***, and repeating the sequence. Notice that each thread suspends whenever ***semaphore\_0*** is unavailable (*line 264*).

Also both threads use the same function for their main processing. This presents no problems because they both have their own unique stack, and C is naturally reentrant. Each thread determines which one it is by examination of the thread input parameter (*line 258*), which is setup when they are created (*lines 102 and 109*).

*i*

*It is also reasonable to obtain the current thread point during thread execution and compare it with the control block's address to determine thread identity.*

## Thread 5

The function ***thread\_5\_entry*** marks the entry point of the thread (*lines 283-305*). ***Thread\_5*** is the second thread in the demonstration system to execute. Its processing consists of incrementing its

counter, getting an event flag from ***thread\_0*** (through ***event\_flags\_0***), and repeating the sequence. Notice that ***thread\_5*** suspends whenever the event flag in ***event\_flags\_0*** is not available (*line 298*).

## Threads 6 and 7

The function ***thread\_6\_and\_7\_entry*** marks the entry point of both ***thread\_6*** and ***thread\_7*** (*lines 307-358*). Both threads have a priority of 8, which makes them the fifth and sixth threads in the demonstration system to execute. The processing for each thread is the same: incrementing its counter, getting ***mutex\_0*** twice, sleeping for 2 timer ticks, releasing ***mutex\_0*** twice, and repeating the sequence. Notice that each thread suspends whenever ***mutex\_0*** is unavailable (*line 325*).

Also both threads use the same function for their main processing. This presents no problems because they both have their own unique stack, and C is naturally reentrant. Each thread determines which one it is by examination of the thread input parameter (*line 319*), which is setup when they are created (*lines 126 and 133*).

## Observing the Demonstration

Each of the demonstration threads increments its own unique counter. The following counters may be examined to check on the demo's operation:

```
thread_0_counter
thread_1_counter
thread_2_counter
thread_3_counter
thread_4_counter
thread_5_counter
thread_6_counter
```

```
thread_7_counter
```

Each of these counters should continue to increase as the demonstration executes, with ***thread\_1\_counter*** and ***thread\_2\_counter*** increasing at the fastest rate.

## Distribution file: **demo.c**

This section displays the complete listing of ***demo.c***, including the line numbers referenced throughout this chapter.

```

000  /* This is a small demo of the high-performance ThreadX kernel.  It includes examples of eight
001  threads of different priorities, using a message queue, semaphore, mutex, event flags group,
002  byte pool, and block pool.  */
003
004  #include "tx_api.h"
005
006  #define    DEMO_STACK_SIZE            1024
007  #define    DEMO_BYTE_POOL_SIZE       9120
008  #define    DEMO_BLOCK_POOL_SIZE      100
009  #define    DEMO_QUEUE_SIZE           100
010
011  /* Define the ThreadX object control blocks...  */
012
013  TX_THREAD          thread_0;
014  TX_THREAD          thread_1;
015  TX_THREAD          thread_2;
016  TX_THREAD          thread_3;
017  TX_THREAD          thread_4;
018  TX_THREAD          thread_5;
019  TX_THREAD          thread_6;
020  TX_THREAD          thread_7;
021  TX_QUEUE           queue_0;
022  TX_SEMAPHORE       semaphore_0;
023  TX_MUTEX           mutex_0;
024  TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP event_flags_0;
025  TX_BYTE_POOL       byte_pool_0;
026  TX_BLOCK_POOL      block_pool_0;
027
028  /* Define the counters used in the demo application...  */
029
030  ULONG              thread_0_counter;
031  ULONG              thread_1_counter;
032  ULONG              thread_1_messages_sent;
033  ULONG              thread_2_counter;
034  ULONG              thread_2_messages_received;
035  ULONG              thread_3_counter;
036  ULONG              thread_4_counter;
037  ULONG              thread_5_counter;
038  ULONG              thread_6_counter;
039  ULONG              thread_7_counter;
040
041  /* Define thread prototypes.  */
042
043  void    thread_0_entry(ULONG thread_input);
044  void    thread_1_entry(ULONG thread_input);
045  void    thread_2_entry(ULONG thread_input);
046  void    thread_3_and_4_entry(ULONG thread_input);
047  void    thread_5_entry(ULONG thread_input);
048  void    thread_6_and_7_entry(ULONG thread_input);
049
050
051  /* Define main entry point.  */
052
053  int main()
054  {
055
056      /* Enter the ThreadX kernel.  */
057      tx_kernel_enter();
058  }
059
060  /* Define what the initial system looks like.  */
061  void    tx_application_define(void *first_unused_memory)
062  {
063
064      CHAR    *pointer;
065
066      /* Create a byte memory pool from which to allocate the thread stacks.  */
067      tx_byte_pool_create(&byte_pool_0, "byte pool 0", first_unused_memory,
068                          DEMO_BYTE_POOL_SIZE);
069
070      /* Put system definition stuff in here, e.g. thread creates and other assorted
071      create information.  */

```

```

072
073 /* Allocate the stack for thread 0. */
074 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
075
076 /* Create the main thread. */
077 tx_thread_create(&thread_0, "thread 0", thread_0_entry, 0,
078                 pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
079                 1, 1, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);
080
081 /* Allocate the stack for thread 1. */
082 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
083
084 /* Create threads 1 and 2. These threads pass information through a ThreadX
085    message queue. It is also interesting to note that these threads have a time
086    slice. */
087 tx_thread_create(&thread_1, "thread 1", thread_1_entry, 1,
088                 pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
089                 16, 16, 4, TX_AUTO_START);
090
091 /* Allocate the stack for thread 2. */
092 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
093 tx_thread_create(&thread_2, "thread 2", thread_2_entry, 2,
094                 pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
095                 16, 16, 4, TX_AUTO_START);
096
097 /* Allocate the stack for thread 3. */
098 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
099
100 /* Create threads 3 and 4. These threads compete for a ThreadX counting semaphore.
101    An interesting thing here is that both threads share the same instruction area. */
102 tx_thread_create(&thread_3, "thread 3", thread_3_and_4_entry, 3,
103                 pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
104                 8, 8, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);
105
106 /* Allocate the stack for thread 4. */
107 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
108
109 tx_thread_create(&thread_4, "thread 4", thread_3_and_4_entry, 4,
110                 pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
111                 8, 8, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);
112
113 /* Allocate the stack for thread 5. */
114 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
115
116 /* Create thread 5. This thread simply pends on an event flag which will be set
117    by thread_0. */
118 tx_thread_create(&thread_5, "thread 5", thread_5_entry, 5,
119                 pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
120                 4, 4, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);
121
122 /* Allocate the stack for thread 6. */
123 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
124
125 /* Create threads 6 and 7. These threads compete for a ThreadX mutex. */
126 tx_thread_create(&thread_6, "thread 6", thread_6_and_7_entry, 6,
127                 pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
128                 8, 8, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);
129
130 /* Allocate the stack for thread 7. */
131 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
132
133 tx_thread_create(&thread_7, "thread 7", thread_6_and_7_entry, 7,
134                 pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
135                 8, 8, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);
136
137 /* Allocate the message queue. */
138 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_QUEUE_SIZE*sizeof(ULONG), TX_NO_WAIT);
139
140 /* Create the message queue shared by threads 1 and 2. */
141 tx_queue_create(&queue_0, "queue 0", TX_1_ULONG, pointer, DEMO_QUEUE_SIZE*sizeof(ULONG));
142
143 /* Create the semaphore used by threads 3 and 4. */

```

```

144     tx_semaphore_create(&semaphore_0, "semaphore 0", 1);
145
146     /* Create the event flags group used by threads 1 and 5. */
147     tx_event_flags_create(&event_flags_0, "event flags 0");
148
149     /* Create the mutex used by thread 6 and 7 without priority inheritance. */
150     tx_mutex_create(&mutex_0, "mutex 0", TX_NO_INHERIT);
151
152     /* Allocate the memory for a small block pool. */
153     tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_BLOCK_POOL_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
154
155     /* Create a block memory pool to allocate a message buffer from. */
156     tx_block_pool_create(&block_pool_0, "block pool 0", sizeof(ULONG), pointer,
157         DEMO_BLOCK_POOL_SIZE);
158
159     /* Allocate a block and release the block memory. */
160     tx_block_allocate(&block_pool_0, &pointer, TX_NO_WAIT);
161
162     /* Release the block back to the pool. */
163     tx_block_release(pointer);
164 }
165
166 /* Define the test threads. */
167 void thread_0_entry(ULONG thread_input)
168 {
169
170     UINT status;
171
172
173     /* This thread simply sits in while-forever-sleep loop. */
174     while(1)
175     {
176
177         /* Increment the thread counter. */
178         thread_0_counter++;
179
180         /* Sleep for 10 ticks. */
181         tx_thread_sleep(10);
182
183         /* Set event flag 0 to wakeup thread 5. */
184         status = tx_event_flags_set(&event_flags_0, 0x1, TX_OR);
185
186         /* Check status. */
187         if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
188             break;
189     }
190 }
191
192 void thread_1_entry(ULONG thread_input)
193 {
194
195     UINT status;
196
197
198     /* This thread simply sends messages to a queue shared by thread 2. */
199     while(1)
200     {
201
202         /* Increment the thread counter. */
203         thread_1_counter++;
204
205         /* Send message to queue 0. */
206         status = tx_queue_send(&queue_0, &thread_1_messages_sent, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
207
208         /* Check completion status. */
209         if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
210             break;
211
212         /* Increment the message sent. */
213         thread_1_messages_sent++;
214     }
215 }

```



```

216 }
217
218
219 void    thread_2_entry(ULONG thread_input)
220 {
221
222     ULONG    received_message;
223     UINT     status;
224
225     /* This thread retrieves messages placed on the queue by thread 1. */
226     while(1)
227     {
228
229         /* Increment the thread counter. */
230         thread_2_counter++;
231
232         /* Retrieve a message from the queue. */
233         status = tx_queue_receive(&queue_0, &received_message, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
234
235         /* Check completion status and make sure the message is what we
236            expected. */
237         if ((status != TX_SUCCESS) || (received_message != thread_2_messages_received))
238             break;
239
240         /* Otherwise, all is okay. Increment the received message count. */
241         thread_2_messages_received++;
242     }
243 }
244
245
246 void    thread_3_and_4_entry(ULONG thread_input)
247 {
248
249     UINT     status;
250
251
252     /* This function is executed from thread 3 and thread 4. As the loop
253        below shows, these function compete for ownership of semaphore_0. */
254     while(1)
255     {
256
257         /* Increment the thread counter. */
258         if (thread_input == 3)
259             thread_3_counter++;
260         else
261             thread_4_counter++;
262
263         /* Get the semaphore with suspension. */
264         status = tx_semaphore_get(&semaphore_0, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
265
266         /* Check status. */
267         if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
268             break;
269
270         /* Sleep for 2 ticks to hold the semaphore. */
271         tx_thread_sleep(2);
272
273         /* Release the semaphore. */
274         status = tx_semaphore_put(&semaphore_0);
275
276         /* Check status. */
277         if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
278             break;
279     }
280 }
281
282
283 void    thread_5_entry(ULONG thread_input)
284 {
285
286     UINT     status;
287     ULONG    actual_flags;

```

```

288
289
290     /* This thread simply waits for an event in a forever loop. */
291     while(1)
292     {
293
294         /* Increment the thread counter. */
295         thread_5_counter++;
296
297         /* Wait for event flag 0. */
298         status = tx_event_flags_get(&event_flags_0, 0x1, TX_OR_CLEAR,
299                                   &actual_flags, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
300
301         /* Check status. */
302         if ((status != TX_SUCCESS) || (actual_flags != 0x1))
303             break;
304     }
305 }
306
307 void thread_6_and_7_entry(ULONG thread_input)
308 {
309
310     UINT status;
311
312
313     /* This function is executed from thread 6 and thread 7. As the loop
314        below shows, these function compete for ownership of mutex_0. */
315     while(1)
316     {
317
318         /* Increment the thread counter. */
319         if (thread_input == 6)
320             thread_6_counter++;
321         else
322             thread_7_counter++;
323
324         /* Get the mutex with suspension. */
325         status = tx_mutex_get(&mutex_0, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
326
327         /* Check status. */
328         if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
329             break;
330
331         /* Get the mutex again with suspension. This shows
332            that an owning thread may retrieve the mutex it
333            owns multiple times. */
334         status = tx_mutex_get(&mutex_0, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
335
336         /* Check status. */
337         if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
338             break;
339
340         /* Sleep for 2 ticks to hold the mutex. */
341         tx_thread_sleep(2);
342
343         /* Release the mutex. */
344         status = tx_mutex_put(&mutex_0);
345
346         /* Check status. */
347         if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
348             break;
349
350         /* Release the mutex again. This will actually
351            release ownership since it was obtained twice. */
352         status = tx_mutex_put(&mutex_0);
353
354         /* Check status. */
355         if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
356             break;
357     }
358 }

```

# *Internal Composition of ThreadX*

---

Source code products without supporting documentation have limited usefulness. Furthermore, complicated coding standards or software design make source code products equally hard to use. This chapter contains a clear and concise description of the internal composition of ThreadX.

- ThreadX Design Goals 256
  - Simplicity 256
  - Scalability 256
  - High Performance 256
  - ThreadX ANSI C Library 257
  - System Include Files 257
  - System Entry 258
  - Application Definition 258
- Software Components 258
  - ThreadX Components 259
  - Component Specification File 259
  - Component Initialization 260
  - Component Body Functions 260
- Coding Conventions 260
  - ThreadX File Names 261
  - ThreadX Name Space 261
  - ThreadX Constants 262
  - ThreadX Struct and Typedef Names 262
  - ThreadX Member Names 263
  - ThreadX Global Data 263
  - ThreadX Local Data 263
  - ThreadX Function Names 263
  - Source Code Indentation 264
  - Comments 264

## ● Initialization Component 266

TX\_INI.H 266

TX\_IHL.C 266

TX\_IKE.C 266

TX\_ILL.[S, ASM] 267

## ● Thread Component 267

TX\_THR.H 267

TX\_TC.C 269

TX\_TCR.[S,ASM] 269

TX\_TCS.[S,ASM] 270

TX\_TDEL.C 270

TX\_TI.C 270

TX\_TIC.[S,ASM] 270

TX\_TIDE.C 270

TX\_TIG.C 270

TX\_TPC.[S,ASM] 270

TX\_TPCH.C 271

TX\_TPRCH.C 271

TX\_TR.C 271

TX\_TRA.C 271

TX\_TREL.C 271

TX\_TS.[S,ASM] 271

TX\_TSA.C 271

TX\_TSB.[S,ASM] 272

TX\_TSE.C 272

TX\_TSLE.C 272

TX\_TSR.[S,ASM] 272

TX\_TSUS.C 272

TX\_TT.C 272

TX\_TTO.C 273

TX\_TTS.C 273

TX\_TTSC.C 273

TX\_TWA.C 273

TXE\_TC.C 273

TXE\_TDEL.C 273

TXE\_TIG.C 273

TXE\_TPCH.C 273

TXE\_TRA.C 274

TXE\_TREL.C 274

TXE\_TRPC.C 274

TXE\_TSA.C 274

TXE\_TT.C 274

TXE\_TTSC.C 274

TXE\_TWA.C 274

● Timer Component 275

TX\_TIM.H 275

TX\_TA.C 277

TX\_TAA.C 278

TX\_TD.C 278

TX\_TDA.C 278

TX\_TIMCH.C 278

TX\_TIMCR.C 278

TX\_TIMD.C 278

TX\_TIMEG.C 278

TX\_TIMES.C 278

TX\_TIMI.C 279

TX\_TIMIG.C 279

TX\_TIMIN.[S,ASM] 279

TX\_TTE.C 279

TXE\_TAA.C 279

TXE\_TDA.C 279

TXE\_TIMD.C 279

TXE\_TIMI.C 279

TXE\_TMCH.C 280

TXE\_TMCR.C 280

● Queue Component 280

TX\_QUE.H 280

TX\_QC.C 280

TX\_QCLE.C 281

TX\_QD.C 281

TX\_QF.C 281

TX\_QFS.C 281

TX\_QI.C 281

TX\_QIG.C 281

TX\_QP.C 281

TX\_QR.C 281

TX\_QS.C 282

TXE\_QC.C 282

TXE\_QD.C 282

TXE\_QF.C 282

TXE\_QFS.C 282

TXE\_QIG.C 282

TXE\_QP.C 282

TXE\_QR.C 282

TXE\_QS.C 283

● Semaphore Component 283

TX\_SEM.H 283

TX\_SC.C 283

TX\_SCLE.C 284

TX\_SD.C 284

TX\_SG.C 284

TX\_SI.C 284

TX\_SIG.C 284

TX\_SP.C 284

TX\_SPRI.C 284

TXE\_SC.C 284

TXE\_SD.C 285

TXE\_SG.C 285

TXE\_SIG.C 285

TXE\_SP.C 285

TXE\_SPRI.C 285

● Mutex Component 285

TX\_MUT.H 285

TX\_MC.C 286

TX\_MCLE.C 286

TX\_MD.C 286

TX\_MG.C 286

TX\_MI.C 286

TX\_MIG.C 287

TX\_MP.C 287

TX\_MPC.C 287

TX\_MPRI.C 287

TXE\_MC.C 287

TXE\_MD.C 287

TXE\_MG.C 287

TXE\_MIG.C 287

TXE\_MP.C 288

TXE\_MPRI.C 288

● Event Flag Component 288

TX\_EVE.H 288

TX\_EFC.C 289

TX\_EFCLE.C 289

TX\_EFD.C 289

TX\_EFG.C 289

TX\_EFI.C 289  
TX\_EFIG.C 289  
TX\_EFS.C 289  
TXE\_EFC.C 289  
TXE\_EFD.C 290  
TXE\_EFG.C 290  
TXE\_EFIG.C 290  
TXE\_EFS.C 290

● Block Memory Component 290

TX\_BLO.H 290  
TX\_BA.C 291  
TX\_BPC.C 291  
TX\_BPCLE.C 291  
TX\_BPD.C 291  
TX\_BPI.C 291  
TX\_BPIG.C 291  
TX\_BPP.C 292  
TX\_BR.C 292  
TXE\_BA.C 292  
TXE\_BPC.C 292  
TXE\_BPD.C 292  
TXE\_BPIG.C 292  
TXE\_BPP.C 292  
TXE\_BR.C 292

● Byte Memory Component 293

TX\_BYT.H 293  
TX\_BYTA.C 293  
TX\_BYTC.C 293  
TX\_BYTCL.C 294  
TX\_BYTD.C 294  
TX\_BYTI.C 294  
TX\_BYTIG.C 294  
TX\_BYTPP.C 294  
TX\_BYTR.C 294  
TX\_BYTS.C 294  
TXE\_BYTA.C 295  
TXE\_BYTC.C 295  
TXE\_BYTD.C 295  
TXE\_BYTG.C 295  
TXE\_BYTP.C 295  
TXE\_BYTR.C 295

# ThreadX Design Goals

ThreadX has three principal design goals: simplicity, scalability in size, and high performance. In many situations these goals are complementary; i.e. simpler, smaller software usually gives better performance.

## Simplicity

Simplicity is the most important design goal of ThreadX. It makes ThreadX easy to use, test, and verify. In addition, it makes it easy for developers to understand exactly what is happening inside. This takes the mystery out of multi-threading, which contrasts sharply with the “black-box” approach so prevalent in the industry.

## Scalability

ThreadX is also designed to be scalable. Its instruction area size ranges from 2KBytes through 15Kbytes, depending on the services actually used by the application. This enables ThreadX to support a wide range of microprocessor architectures, ranging from small micro-controllers through high-performance RISC and DSP processors.

How is ThreadX so scalable? First, ThreadX is designed with a software component methodology, which allows automatic removal of whole components that are not used. Second, it places each function in a separate file to minimize each function's interaction with the rest of the system. Because ThreadX is implemented as a C library, only the functions that are used become part of the final embedded image.

## High Performance

ThreadX is designed for high performance. This is achieved in a variety of ways, including algorithm optimizations, register variables, in-line assembly



language, low-overhead timer interrupt handling, and optimized context switching. In addition, applications have the ability (with the conditional compilation flag **TX\_DISABLE\_ERROR\_CHECKING**) to disable the basic error checking facilities of the ThreadX API. This feature is very useful in the tuning phase of application development. By disabling basic error checking, a 30 percent performance boost can be achieved on most ThreadX implementations. And, of course, the resulting code image is also smaller!

## ThreadX ANSI C Library

As mentioned before, ThreadX is implemented as a C library, which must be linked with the application software. The ThreadX library consists of 146 object files that are derived from 138 C source files and eight (8) processor specific assembly language files. There are also ten C include files that are used in the C file compilation process. All the C source and include files conform completely to the ANSI standard.

## System Include Files

ThreadX applications need access to two include files: **tx\_api.h** and **tx\_port.h**. The **tx\_api.h** file contains all the constants, function prototypes, and object data structures. This file is generic; i.e., it is the same for all processor support packages.

The **tx\_port.h** file is included by **tx\_api.h**. It contains processor and/or development tool specific information, including data type assignments and interrupt management macros that are used throughout the ThreadX C source code. The **tx\_port.h** file also contains the ThreadX port-specific ASCII version string, **\_tx\_version\_id**.

*i*

*The mapping of the ThreadX API services to the underlying error checking or core processing functions is done in **tx\_api.h**.*

The ThreadX source package also contains eight (8) system include files. These files represent the internal component specification files, which are discussed later in this chapter.

## System Entry

From the application's point of view, the entry point of ThreadX is the function ***tx\_kernel\_enter***. However, this function is contained in the initialization file so its real name is ***\_tx\_initialize\_kernel\_enter***. Typically, this function is called from the application main routine with interrupts still disabled from the hardware reset and compiler start-up processing.

The entry function is responsible for calling the processor-specific, low-level initialization and the high-level C initialization. After all the initialization is complete, this function transfers control to the ThreadX scheduling loop.

## Application Definition

ThreadX applications are required to provide their own ***tx\_application\_define*** function. This function is responsible for setting up the initial threads and other system objects. This function is called from the high-level C initialization mentioned previously.



*Avoid enabling interrupts inside of the ***tx\_application\_define*** function. If interrupts are enabled, unpredictable results may occur.*

## Software Components

Express Logic utilizes a software component methodology in its products. A software component is somewhat similar to an object or class in C++. Each component provides a set of action functions that operate on the internal data of the component. In general, components are not allowed access to the

global data of other components. The one exception to this rule is the thread component. For performance reasons, information like the currently running thread is accessed directly by other ThreadX components.

What makes up a ThreadX component? Each ThreadX component is comprised of a specification include file, an initialization function, and one or more action functions. As mentioned previously, each ThreadX function is defined in its own file.



*If it were not for the design goal of scalable code size, component files would likely contain more than one function. In general, Express Logic recommends a “more than one function per-file” approach to application development.*

## ThreadX Components

There are nine functional ThreadX components. Each component has the same basic construction, and its processing and data structures are easily distinguished from those of other components. The following lists ThreadX software components:

- Initialize
- Thread
- Timer
- Queue
- Semaphore
- Mutex
- Event Flags
- Block Memory
- Byte Memory

## Component Specification File

Each ThreadX software component has a specification file. The specification file is a standard C include file that contains all component constants, data types, external and internal component function prototypes, and even the component's global data definitions.

The specification file is included in all component files and in files of other components that need to access the individual component's functions.

## **Component Initialization**

Each component has an initialization function, which is responsible for initializing all of the component's internal global C data. In addition, all component global data instantiation takes place inside of the component's initialization file. This is accomplished with conditional compilation in the component's specification file as well as a special define in its initialization file.

If none of the component's services are used by the application, only the component's small initialization function is included in the application's run-time image.

## **Component Body Functions**

A variable number of the component body or "action" functions complete the composition of a ThreadX software component.

As a general rule, component body functions are the only functions allowed to access the global data of the component. All interaction with other components must use access functions defined in the other component's specification file.

# **Coding Conventions**

All ThreadX software conforms to a strict set of coding conventions. This makes it easier to understand and maintain. In addition, it provides a reasonable template for application software conventions.

## ThreadX File Names

All ThreadX C file names take the form

**TX\_c[x].C**

where **c** represents the first initial letter of the component and **[x]** represents a variable number of supplemental initial letters used to identify the function contained in the file. For example, file **tx\_tc.c** contains the function **\_tx\_thread\_create** and file **tx\_ike.c** contains the function **\_tx\_initialize\_kernel\_enter**.

Component specification file names are slightly different, taking on the form

**TX\_ccc.H**

where the **ccc** field represents the first three characters of the component's name. For example, the file **tx\_tim.h** contains the timer component specification.

The file naming conventions make it easy to distinguish ThreadX files from all other application source files.

## ThreadX Name Space

In a similar vein, all ThreadX functions and global data have a leading **\_tx** in their name. This keeps ThreadX global symbols separate from the application symbols and in one contiguous area of load map created by the linker.

**i**

*Most development tools will insert an additional underscore in front of all global symbols.*

For ANSI compliance and greater compiler compatibility, all symbolic names in ThreadX are limited to 31 characters.

## ThreadX Constants

All ThreadX constants have the form

**TX\_NAME** or **TX\_C\_NAME**

and are comprised of capital letters, numerics, and underscores. System constants (defined in *tx\_api.h* or *tx\_port.h*) take the form

**TX\_NAME**

For example, the system-wide constant associated with a successful service call return is **TX\_SUCCESS**.

Component constants (defined in component specification files) take on the form

**TX\_C\_NAME**

where **C** represents the capitalized entire component name. For example,

**TX\_INITIALIZE\_IN\_PROGRESS** is specific to the initialization component and is defined in the file *tx\_ini.h*.

## ThreadX Struct and Typedef Names

ThreadX C *structure* and *typedef* names are similar to the component-specific constant names described previously. System wide typedefs have the form

**TX\_C\_NAME**

Just like the constant names, the **C** stands for the capitalized entire component name. For example, the queue control structure typedef is called **TX\_QUEUE**.

To limit the number of ThreadX include files an application must deal with, the component specific typedefs that would normally be defined in the component specification files are contained in *tx\_api.h*.

For greater readability, primitive data types like **UINT**, **ULONG**, **VOID**, etc., do not require the leading **TX\_** modifier. All primitive ThreadX data types are defined in the file **tx\_port.h**.

## ThreadX Member Names

ThreadX structure member names are all lower case and take on the form

**tx\_c\_name**

where **c** is the entire component name (which is also the same as the parent structure or typedef name). For example, the thread identification field in the **TX\_THREAD** structure is named **tx\_thread\_id**.

## ThreadX Global Data

Each ThreadX component has a small amount of global C data elements. All global data elements are lower-case and have the form **\_tx\_c\_name**. Like other ThreadX names, the **c** represents the entire component name. For example, the current thread pointer is part of the thread control component and is named **\_tx\_thread\_current\_ptr** and defined in the file **tx\_thr.h**.

## ThreadX Local Data

Readability is the only requirement imposed on local data elements, i.e. data defined inside of ThreadX C functions. The most frequently used of these elements are typically assigned the *register* modifier if supported by the target compiler.

## ThreadX Function Names

All ThreadX component function names have the form

**\_tx\_c\_name**

ThreadX functions are in lower-case, where the **c** represents the entire component name. For example, the function that creates new application threads is named **`_tx_thread_create`**.

## Source Code Indentation

The standard indentation increment in ThreadX source code is four spaces. Tab characters are avoided in order to make the source code less sensitive to text editors. In addition, the source code is also designed to use indentation and white-space for greater readability.

## Comments

In general, each C statement in the ThreadX source code has a meaningful comment. Each source file also contains a comment header that contains a description of the file, revision history, and the component it belongs to. Figure 16 on page 265 shows the file header for the thread create file, **`tx_tc.c`**.



```

/*****
**
** ThreadX Component
**
** Thread Control (THR)
**
*****/
/*****
**
** FUNCTION                                RELEASE
**
** _tx_thread_create                      PORTABLE C
**                                     3.0
**
** AUTHOR
**
** William E. Lamie, Express Logic, Inc.
**
** DESCRIPTION
**
** This function creates a thread and places it on the list of created
** threads.
**
** INPUT
**
** thread_ptr          Thread control block pointer
** name                Pointer to thread name string
** entry_function       Entry function of the thread
** entry_input          32-bit input value to thread
** stack_start          Pointer to start of stack
** stack_size           Stack size in bytes
** priority             Priority of thread (0-31)
** preempt_threshold    Preemption-threshold
** time_slice           Thread time-slice value
** auto_start           Automatic start selection
**
** OUTPUT
**
** return status        Thread create return status
**
** CALLS
**
** _tx_thread_stack_build      Build initial thread stack
** _tx_thread_resume           Resume automatic start thread
** _tx_thread_system_return    Return to system on preemption
**
** CALLED BY
**
** Application Code
** _tx_timer_initialize        Create system timer thread
**
** RELEASE HISTORY
**
** DATE            NAME            DESCRIPTION
**
** 12-31-1996      William E. Lamie  Initial Version 3.0
*****/

```

---

**FIGURE 16. ThreadX File Header Example**

## Initialization Component

This component is responsible for performing all ThreadX initialization. This processing includes setting-up processor specific resources as well as calling all of the other component initialization functions. Once basic ThreadX initialization is complete, the application ***tx\_application\_define*** function is called to perform application specific initialization. The thread scheduling loop is entered after all initialization is complete.

### TX\_INI.H

This is the specification file for the ThreadX Initialization Component. All component constants, external interfaces, and data structures are defined in this file.

The global data for the initialization component is defined in this file and consists of the following data elements:

#### ***\_tx\_initialize\_unused\_memory***

This VOID pointer contains the first memory address available to the application after ThreadX is initialized. The contents of this variable is passed into the application's ***tx\_application\_define*** function.

### TX\_IHL.C

This file contains ***\_tx\_initialize\_high\_level***, which is responsible for calling all other ThreadX component initialization functions and the application definition function, ***tx\_application\_define***.

### TX\_IKE.C

This file contains ***\_tx\_initialize\_kernel\_enter***, which coordinates the initialization and start-up processing of ThreadX. Note that the ***tx\_kernel\_enter*** function used by the application is mapped to this routine.

**TX\_ILL.[S, ASM]**

This file contains ***\_tx\_initialize\_low\_level***, which handles all assembly language initialization processing. This file is processor and development tool specific.

## Thread Component

This component is responsible for all thread management activities, including thread creation, scheduling, and interrupt management. The thread component is the most processor/compiler-specific of all ThreadX components, hence, it has the most assembly language files.

**TX\_THR.H**

This is the specification file for the ThreadX Thread Component. All component constants, external interfaces, and data structures are defined in this file.

The global data for the thread component is defined in this file and consists of the following data elements:

***\_tx\_thread\_system\_stack\_ptr***

This VOID pointer contains the address of the system stack pointer. The system stack is used inside of the ThreadX scheduling loop and inside of interrupt processing.

***\_tx\_thread\_current\_ptr***

This TX\_THREAD pointer contains the address of the currently running thread's control block. If this pointer is NULL, the system is idle.

***\_tx\_thread\_execute\_ptr***

This TX\_THREAD pointer contains the address of the next thread to execute and is

used by the scheduling loop to determine which thread to execute next.

**\_tx\_thread\_created\_ptr**

This TX\_THREAD pointer is the head pointer of the created thread list. The list is a doubly-linked, circular list of all created thread control blocks.

**\_tx\_thread\_created\_count**

This ULONG contains the number of currently created threads in the system.

**\_tx\_thread\_system\_state**

This ULONG contains the current system state. It is set during initialization and during interrupt processing to disable internal thread switching inside of the ThreadX services.

**\_tx\_thread\_preempted\_map**

This ULONG represents each of the 32 thread priority levels in ThreadX with a single bit. A set bit indicates that a thread of the corresponding priority level was preempted when it had preemption-threshold in force.

**\_tx\_thread\_priority\_map**

This ULONG represents each of the 32 thread priority levels in ThreadX with a single bit. It is used to find the next lower priority ready thread when a higher-priority thread suspends.

**\_tx\_thread\_highest\_priority**

This UINT contains the priority of the highest priority thread ready for execution.

**\_tx\_thread\_lowest\_bit**

This array of UCHARs contains a table lookup for quickly finding the lowest bit set in a byte. This is used in examination of the

`_tx_thread_priority_map` to find the next ready priority group.

#### **`_tx_thread_priority_list`**

This array of TX\_THREAD list-head pointers is directly indexed by thread priority. If an entry is non-NULL, there is at least one thread at that priority ready for execution. The threads in each priority list are managed in a doubly-linked, circular list of thread control blocks. The thread in the front of the list represents the next thread to execute for that priority.

#### **`_tx_thread_preempt_disable`**

This UINT is an internal mechanism for ThreadX services to enter into internal critical section processing. This reduces the amount of time interrupts need to be disabled inside of ThreadX services.

#### **`_tx_thread_special_string`**

This array of CHAR contains initials of various people and institutions that have helped make ThreadX possible.

### **TX\_TC.C**

This file contains **`_tx_thread_create`**, which is responsible for creating application threads.

### **TX\_TCR.[S,ASM]**

This file contains **`_tx_thread_context_restore`**, which is responsible for processing at the end of managed ISRs. This function is processor/compiler specific and is typically written in assembly language.

**TX\_TCS.[S,ASM]**

This file contains **`_tx_thread_context_save`**, which is responsible for saving the interrupted context in the beginning of ISR processing. This function is processor/compiler specific and is typically written in assembly language.

**TX\_TDEL.C**

This file contains **`_tx_thread_delete`**, which is responsible for deleting a previously created thread.

**TX\_TI.C**

This file contains **`_tx_thread_initialize`**, which is responsible for basic thread component initialization.

**TX\_TIC.[S,ASM]**

This file contains **`_tx_thread_interrupt_control`**, which is responsible for enabling and disabling processor interrupts.

**TX\_TIDE.C**

This file contains **`_tx_thread_identify`**, which is responsible for returning the value of **`_tx_thread_current_ptr`**.

**TX\_TIG.C**

This file contains **`_tx_thread_info_get`**, which is responsible for returning various information about a thread.

**TX\_TPC.[S,ASM]**

This file contains **`_tx_thread_preempt_check`**, which determines if preemption occurred while processing a lower level interrupt. This function is processor/compiler specific and is written in assembly language. In addition, this function is optional and is not needed for most ports.

**TX\_TPCH.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_thread\_preemption\_change***, which is responsible for changing the preemption-threshold of the specified thread.

**TX\_TPRCH.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_thread\_priority\_change***, which is responsible for changing the priority of the specified thread.

**TX\_TR.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_thread\_resume***, which is responsible for making the specified thread ready for execution. This function is called from other ThreadX components as well as the thread resume API service.

**TX\_TRA.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_thread\_resume\_api***, which is responsible for processing application resume thread requests.

**TX\_TREL.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_thread\_relinquish***, which is responsible for placing the current thread behind all other threads of the same priority that are ready for execution.

**TX\_TS.[S,ASM]**

This file contains ***\_tx\_thread\_schedule***, which is responsible for scheduling and restoring the last context of the highest-priority thread ready for execution. This function is processor/compiler specific and is written in assembly language.

**TX\_TSA.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_thread\_suspend\_api***, which is responsible for processing application thread suspend requests.

**TX\_TSB.[S,ASM]**

This file contains **`_tx_thread_stack_build`**, which is responsible for creating each thread's initial stack frame. The initial stack frame causes an interrupt context return to the beginning of the **`_tx_thread_shell_entry`** function. This function then calls the specified application thread entry function. The **`_tx_thread_stack_build`** function is processor/compiler specific and is written in assembly language.

**TX\_TSE.C**

This file contains **`_tx_thread_shell_entry`**, which is responsible for calling the specified application thread entry function. If the thread entry function returns, **`_tx_thread_shell_entry`** suspends the thread in the "finished" state.

**TX\_TSLE.C**

This file contains **`_tx_thread_sleep`**, which is responsible for processing all application thread sleep requests.

**TX\_TSR.[S,ASM]**

This file contains **`_tx_thread_system_return`**, which is responsible for saving a thread's minimal context and exiting to the ThreadX scheduling loop. This function is processor/compiler specific and is written in assembly language.

**TX\_TSUS.C**

This file contains **`_tx_thread_suspend`**, which is responsible for processing all thread suspend requests from internal ThreadX components and the application software.

**TX\_TT.C**

This file contains **`_tx_thread_terminate`**, which is responsible for processing all thread terminate requests.



**TX\_TTO.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_thread\_timeout***, which is responsible for processing all suspension time-out conditions.

**TX\_TTS.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_thread\_time\_slice***, which is responsible for processing thread time-slicing.

**TX\_TTSC.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change***, which is responsible for requests to change a thread's time-slice.

**TX\_TWA.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_thread\_wait\_abort***, which is responsible for breaking the wait condition of the specified thread.

**TXE\_TC.C**

This file contains ***\_txe\_thread\_create***, which is responsible for checking the thread create requests for errors.

**TXE\_TDEL.C**

This file contains ***\_txe\_thread\_delete***, which is responsible for checking the thread delete requests for errors.

**TXE\_TIG.C**

This file contains ***\_txe\_thread\_info\_get***, which is responsible for checking thread information get requests for errors.

**TXE\_TPCH.C**

This file contains ***\_txe\_thread\_preemption\_change***, which is responsible for checking preemption change requests for errors.

**TXE\_TRA.C**

This file contains **`_txe_thread_resume_api`**, which is responsible for checking thread resume requests for errors.

**TXE\_TREL.C**

This file contains **`_txe_thread_relinquish`**, which is responsible for checking thread relinquish requests for errors.

**TXE\_TRPC.C**

This file contains **`_txe_thread_priority_change`**, which is responsible for checking priority change requests for errors.

**TXE\_TSA.C**

This file contains **`_txe_thread_suspend_api`**, which is responsible for checking thread suspend requests for errors.

**TXE\_TT.C**

This file contains **`_txe_thread_terminate`**, which is responsible for checking thread terminate requests for errors.

**TXE\_TTSC.C**

This file contains **`_txe_thread_time_slice_change`**, which is responsible for checking time-slice changes for errors.

**TXE\_TWA.C**

This file contains **`_txe_thread_wait_abort`**, which is responsible for checking thread wait abort requests for errors.

# Timer Component

This component is responsible for all timer management activities, including thread time-slicing, thread sleeps, API service time-outs, and application timers. The timer component has one processor/compiler-specific function that is responsible for handling the physical timer interrupt.

## TX\_TIM.H

This is the specification file for the ThreadX Timer Component. All component constants, external interfaces, and data structures are defined in this file.

The global data for the timer component is defined in this file and consists of the following data elements:

### ***\_tx\_timer\_system\_clock***

This ULONG contains a tick counter that increments on each timer interrupt.

### ***\_tx\_timer\_time\_slice***

This ULONG contains the time-slice of the current thread. If this value is zero, no time-slice is active.

### ***\_tx\_timer\_expired\_time\_slice***

This UINT is set if a time-slice expiration is detected in the timer interrupt handling. It is cleared once the time-slice has been processed in the ISR.

### ***\_tx\_timer\_list***

This array of active timer linked-list head pointers is indexed by the timer's relative time displacement from the current time pointer. Each timer expiration list is maintained in a doubly-linked, circular fashion.

**\_tx\_timer\_list\_start**

This TX\_INTERNAL\_TIMER head pointer contains the address of the first timer list. It is used to reset the \_tx\_timer\_current\_ptr to the beginning of \_tx\_timer\_list when a wrap condition is detected.

**\_tx\_timer\_list\_end**

This TX\_INTERNAL\_TIMER head pointer contains the address of the end of the \_tx\_timer\_list array. It is used to signal when to reset the \_tx\_timer\_current\_ptr to the beginning of the \_tx\_timer\_list.

**\_tx\_timer\_current\_ptr**

This TX\_INTERNAL\_TIMER head pointer points to an active timer list in the \_tx\_timer\_list array. If a timer interrupt occurs and this entry is non-NULL, one or more timers have possibly expired. This pointer is positioned to point at the next timer list head pointer after each timer interrupt.

**\_tx\_timer\_expired**

This UINT flag is set in the timer ISR when a timer has expired. It is cleared in the timer system thread after the expiration has been processed.

**\_tx\_timer\_thread**

This TX\_THREAD structure is the control block for the internal timer thread. This thread is setup during initialization and is used to process all timer expirations.

**\_tx\_timer\_stack\_start**

This VOID pointer represents the starting address of the internal timer thread's stack.

**\_tx\_timer\_stack\_size**

This ULONG represents the size of the internal timer thread's stack. This variable contains the value specified by TX\_TIMER\_THREAD\_STACK\_SIZE, which is defined inside of tx\_port.h or on the command line.

**\_tx\_timer\_priority**

This UINT represents the priority of the internal timer thread.

**\_tx\_timer\_created\_ptr**

This TX\_TIMER pointer is the head pointer of the created application timer list. The list is a doubly-linked, circular list of all created timer control blocks.

**\_tx\_timer\_created\_count**

This ULONG represents the number of created application timers.

**\_tx\_timer\_thread\_stack\_area**

This character array allocates space for the system timer's stack. The size of the array is defined by TX\_TIMER\_THREAD\_STACK\_SIZE, and the **\_tx\_timer\_stack\_start** and **\_tx\_timer\_stack\_end** pointers point to the beginning and end of this array.

**TX\_TA.C**

This file contains **\_tx\_timer\_activate**, which is responsible for processing all timer activate requests (thread sleeps, time-outs, and application timers).

**TX\_TAA.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_timer\_activate\_api***, which is responsible for processing application timer activate requests.

**TX\_TD.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_timer\_deactivate***, which is responsible for processing all timer deactivate requests (time-outs and application timers).

**TX\_TDA.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_timer\_deactivate\_api***, which is responsible for processing application timer deactivate requests.

**TX\_TIMCH.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_timer\_change***, which is responsible for processing application timer change requests.

**TX\_TIMCR.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_timer\_create***, which is responsible for processing application timer create requests.

**TX\_TIMD.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_timer\_delete***, which is responsible for processing application timer delete requests.

**TX\_TIMEG.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_time\_get***, which is responsible for processing requests to read the system clock, ***\_tx\_timer\_system\_clock***.

**TX\_TIMES.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_time\_set***, which is responsible for processing requests to set the ***\_tx\_timer\_system\_clock*** to a specified value.

**TX\_TIMI.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_timer\_initialize***, which is responsible for initialization of the timer component.

**TX\_TIMIG.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_timer\_info\_get***, which is responsible for retrieving information about a timer.

**TX\_TIMIN.[S,ASM]**

This file contains ***\_tx\_timer\_interrupt***, which is responsible for processing actual timer interrupts. The interrupt processing is typically optimized to reduce overhead if neither a timer nor a time-slice has expired.

**TX\_TTE.C**

This file contains ***\_tx\_timer\_thread\_entry***, which is responsible for the processing of the internal timer thread.

**TXE\_TAA.C**

This file contains ***\_txe\_timer\_activate\_api***, which is responsible for checking application timer activate requests for errors

**TXE\_TDA.C**

This file contains ***\_txe\_timer\_deactivate\_api***, which is responsible for checking application timer deactivate requests for errors.

**TXE\_TIMD.C**

This file contains ***\_txe\_timer\_delete***, which is responsible for checking application timer delete requests for errors.

**TXE\_TIMI.C**

This file contains ***\_txe\_timer\_info\_get***, which is responsible for checking application timer information get requests.

**TXE\_TMCH.C**

This file contains **`_txe_timer_change`**, which is responsible for checking application timer change requests for errors.

**TXE\_TMCR.C**

This file contains **`_txe_timer_create`**, which is responsible for checking application timer create requests for errors.

## Queue Component

This component is responsible for all queue management activities, including queue creation, deletion, and message sending/receiving.

**TX\_QUE.H**

This is the specification file for the ThreadX Queue Component. All component constants, external interfaces, and data structures are defined in this file.

The global data for the queue component is defined in this file and consists of the following data elements:

**`_tx_queue_created_ptr`**

This TX\_QUEUE pointer is the head pointer of the created queue list. The list is a doubly-linked, circular list of all created queue control blocks.

**`_tx_queue_created_count`**

This ULONG represents the number of created application queues.

**TX\_QC.C**

This file contains **`_tx_queue_create`**, which is responsible for processing queue create requests.



**TX\_QCLE.C**

This file contains **`_tx_queue_cleanup`**, which is responsible for processing queue suspension timeouts, queue-suspended thread termination, and thread wait abort requests.

**TX\_QD.C**

This file contains **`_tx_queue_delete`**, which is responsible for processing queue deletion requests.

**TX\_QF.C**

This file contains **`_tx_queue_flush`**, which is responsible for processing queue flush requests.

**TX\_QFS.C**

This file contains **`_tx_queue_front_send`**, which is responsible for processing requests to send a message to the front of a queue.

**TX\_QI.C**

This file contains **`_tx_queue_initialize`**, which is responsible for initialization of the queue component.

**TX\_QIG.C**

This file contains **`_tx_queue_info_get`**, which is responsible for retrieving information about a queue.

**TX\_QP.C**

This file contains **`_tx_queue_prioritize`**, which is responsible for finding the highest priority thread suspended on a queue and placing it at the front of the suspension list.

**TX\_QR.C**

This file contains **`_tx_queue_receive`**, which is responsible for processing queue receive requests.

**TX\_QS.C**

This file contains **`_tx_queue_send`**, which is responsible for processing queue send requests.

**TXE\_QC.C**

This file contains **`_txe_queue_create`**, which is responsible for checking queue create requests for errors.

**TXE\_QD.C**

This file contains **`_txe_queue_delete`**, which is responsible for checking queue delete requests for errors.

**TXE\_QF.C**

This file contains **`_txe_queue_flush`**, which is responsible for checking queue flush requests for errors.

**TXE\_QFS.C**

This file contains **`_txe_queue_front_send`**, which is responsible for checking queue front send requests for errors.

**TXE\_QIG.C**

This file contains **`_txe_queue_info_get`**, which is responsible for checking queue information retrieve requests for errors.

**TXE\_QP.C**

This file contains **`_txe_queue_prioritize`**, which is responsible for checking queue prioritize requests for errors.

**TXE\_QR.C**

This file contains **`_txe_queue_receive`**, which is responsible for checking queue receive requests for errors.

**TXE\_QS.C**

This file contains **`_txe_queue_send`**, which is responsible for checking queue send requests for errors.

## Semaphore Component

This component is responsible for all semaphore management activities, including semaphore creation, deletion, semaphore gets, and semaphore puts.

**TX\_SEM.H**

This is the specification file for the ThreadX Semaphore Component. All component constants, external interfaces, and data structures are defined in this file.

The global data for the semaphore component is defined in this file and consists of the following data elements:

**`_tx_semaphore_created_ptr`**

This TX\_SEMAPHORE pointer is the head pointer of the created semaphore list. The list is a doubly-linked, circular list of all created semaphore control blocks.

**`_tx_semaphore_created_count`**

This ULONG represents the number of created application semaphores.

**TX\_SC.C**

This file contains **`_tx_semaphore_create`**, which is responsible for processing semaphore create requests.

**TX\_SCLE.C**

This file contains **`_tx_semaphore_cleanup`**, which is responsible for processing semaphore suspension time-outs, semaphore-suspended thread termination, and thread wait abort requests.

**TX\_SD.C**

This file contains **`_tx_semaphore_delete`**, which is responsible for processing semaphore deletion requests.

**TX\_SG.C**

This file contains **`_tx_semaphore_get`**, which is responsible for processing semaphore get requests.

**TX\_SI.C**

This file contains **`_tx_semaphore_initialize`**, which is responsible for initialization of the semaphore component.

**TX\_SIG.C**

This file contains **`_tx_semaphore_info_get`**, which is responsible for semaphore information retrieval requests.

**TX\_SP.C**

This file contains **`_tx_semaphore_put`**, which is responsible for semaphore put requests.

**TX\_SPRI.C**

This file contains **`_tx_semaphore_prioritize`**, which is responsible for finding the highest priority thread suspended on a semaphore and placing it at the front of the suspension list.

**TXE\_SC.C**

This file contains **`_txe_semaphore_create`**, which is responsible for checking semaphore create requests for errors.

**TXE\_SD.C**

This file contains `_txe_semaphore_delete`, which is responsible for checking semaphore delete requests for errors.

**TXE\_SG.C**

This file contains `_txe_semaphore_get`, which is responsible for checking semaphore get requests for errors.

**TXE\_SIG.C**

This file contains `_txe_semaphore_info_get`, which is responsible for checking semaphore information retrieval requests for errors.

**TXE\_SP.C**

This file contains `_txe_semaphore_put`, which is responsible for checking semaphore put requests for errors.

**TXE\_SPRI.C**

This file contains `_txe_semaphore_prioritize`, which is responsible for checking semaphore prioritize requests for errors.

## Mutex Component

This component is responsible for all mutex management activities, including mutex creation, deletion, mutex gets, and mutex puts.

**TX\_MUT.H**

This is the specification file for the ThreadX Mutex Component. All component constants, external interfaces, and data structures are defined in this file.

The global data for the mutex component is defined in this file and consists of the following data elements:

**`_tx_mutex_created_ptr`**

This TX\_MUTEX pointer is the head pointer of the created mutex list. The list is a doubly-linked, circular list of all created mutex control blocks.

**`_tx_mutex_created_count`**

This ULONG represents the number of created application mutexes.

**TX\_MC.C**

This file contains **`_tx_mutex_create`**, which is responsible for processing mutex create requests.

**TX\_MCLE.C**

This file contains **`_tx_mutex_cleanup`**, which is responsible for processing mutex suspension time-outs, mutex-suspended thread termination, and thread wait abort requests.

**TX\_MD.C**

This file contains **`_tx_mutex_delete`**, which is responsible for processing mutex deletion requests.

**TX\_MG.C**

This file contains **`_tx_mutex_get`**, which is responsible for processing mutex get requests.

**TX\_MI.C**

This file contains **`_tx_mutex_initialize`**, which is responsible for initialization of the mutex component.

**TX\_MIG.C**

This file contains **`_tx_mutex_info_get`**, which is responsible for mutex information retrieval requests.

**TX\_MP.C**

This file contains **`_tx_mutex_put`**, which is responsible for mutex put requests.

**TX\_MPC.C**

This file contains **`_tx_mutex_priority_change`**, which is used by the mutex priority-inheritance logic to modify thread priorities.

**TX\_MPRI.C**

This file contains **`_tx_mutex_prioritize`**, which is responsible for finding the highest priority thread suspended on a mutex and placing it at the front of the suspension list.

**TXE\_MC.C**

This file contains **`_txe_mutex_create`**, which is responsible for checking mutex create requests for errors.

**TXE\_MD.C**

This file contains **`_txe_mutex_delete`**, which is responsible for checking mutex delete requests for errors.

**TXE\_MG.C**

This file contains **`_txe_mutex_get`**, which is responsible for checking mutex get requests for errors.

**TXE\_MIG.C**

This file contains **`_txe_mutex_info_get`**, which is responsible for checking mutex information retrieval requests for errors.

**TXE\_MP.C**

This file contains **`_txe_mutex_put`**, which is responsible for checking mutex put requests for errors.

**TXE\_MPRI.C**

This file contains **`_txe_mutex_prioritize`**, which is responsible for checking mutex prioritize requests for errors.

## Event Flag Component

This component is responsible for all event flag management activities, including event flag creation, deletion, setting, and retrieval.

**TX\_EVE.H**

This is the specification file for the ThreadX Event Flags Component. All component constants, external interfaces, and data structures are defined in this file.

The global data for the event flags component is defined in this file and consists of the following data elements:

**`_tx_event_flags_created_ptr`**

This `TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP` pointer is the head pointer of the created event flags list. The list is a doubly-linked, circular list of all created event flags control blocks.

**`_tx_event_flags_created_count`**

This `ULONG` represents the number of created application event flags.



**TX\_EFC.C**

This file contains **`_tx_event_flags_create`**, which is responsible for processing event flag create requests.

**TX\_EFCLE.C**

This file contains **`_tx_event_flags_cleanup`**, which is responsible for processing event flag suspension time-outs, event-flag-suspended thread termination, and thread wait abort requests.

**TX\_EFD.C**

This file contains **`_tx_event_flags_delete`**, which is responsible for processing event flag deletion requests.

**TX\_EFG.C**

This file contains **`_tx_event_flags_get`**, which is responsible for processing event flag retrieval requests.

**TX\_EFI.C**

This file contains **`_tx_event_flags_initialize`**, which is responsible for initialization of the event flags component.

**TX\_EFIG.C**

This file contains **`_tx_event_flags_info_get`**, which is responsible for event flag information retrieval.

**TX\_EFS.C**

This file contains **`_tx_event_flags_set`**, which is responsible for processing event flag setting requests.

**TXE\_EFC.C**

This file contains **`_txe_event_flags_create`**, which is responsible for checking event flags create requests for errors.

**TXE\_EFD.C**

This file contains `_txe_event_flags_delete`, which is responsible for checking event flags delete requests for errors.

**TXE\_EFG.C**

This file contains `_txe_event_flags_get`, which is responsible for checking event flag retrieval requests for errors.

**TXE\_EFIG.C**

This file contains `_txe_event_flags_info_get`, which is responsible for checking event flag information retrieval requests for errors.

**TXE\_EFS.C**

This file contains `_txe_event_flags_set`, which is responsible for checking event flag setting requests for errors.

## Block Memory Component

This component is responsible for all block memory management activities, including block pool creation, deletion, block allocates, and block releases.

**TX\_BLO.H**

This is the specification file for the ThreadX Block Memory Component. All component constants, external interfaces, and data structures are defined in this file.

The global data for the block memory component is defined in this file and consists of the following data elements:

**`_tx_block_pool_created_ptr`**

This TX\_BLOCK\_POOL pointer is the head pointer of the created block memory pool list. The list is a doubly-linked, circular list of all created block pool control blocks.

**`_tx_block_pool_created_count`**

This ULONG represents the number of created application block memory pools.

**TX\_BA.C**

This file contains **`_tx_block_allocate`**, which is responsible for processing block allocation requests.

**TX\_BPC.C**

This file contains **`_tx_block_pool_create`**, which is responsible for processing block memory pool create requests.

**TX\_BPCLE.C**

This file contains **`_tx_block_pool_cleanup`**, which is responsible for processing block memory suspension time-outs, block-memory-suspended thread termination, and thread wait abort requests.

**TX\_BPD.C**

This file contains **`_tx_block_pool_delete`**, which is responsible for processing block memory pool delete requests.

**TX\_BPI.C**

This file contains **`_tx_block_pool_initialize`**, which is responsible for initialization of the block memory pool component.

**TX\_BPIG.C**

This file contains **`_tx_block_pool_info_get`**, which is responsible for block pool information retrieval.

**TX\_BPP.C**

This file contains **`_tx_block_pool_prioritize`**, which is responsible for finding the highest priority thread suspended on a block pool and moving it to the front of the suspension list.

**TX\_BR.C**

This file contains **`_tx_block_release`**, which is responsible for processing block release requests.

**TXE\_BA.C**

This file contains **`_txe_block_allocate`**, which is responsible for checking block allocate requests for errors.

**TXE\_BPC.C**

This file contains **`_txe_block_pool_create`**, which is responsible for checking block memory pool create requests for errors.

**TXE\_BPD.C**

This file contains **`_txe_block_pool_delete`**, which is responsible for checking block memory pool delete requests for errors.

**TXE\_BPIG.C**

This file contains **`_txe_block_pool_info_get`**, which is responsible for checking block pool information retrieval requests for errors.

**TXE\_BPP.C**

This file contains **`_txe_block_pool_prioritize`**, which is responsible for checking block pool prioritize requests for errors.

**TXE\_BR.C**

This file contains **`_txe_block_release`**, which is responsible for checking block memory release request for errors.

# Byte Memory Component

This component is responsible for all byte memory management activities, including byte pool creation, deletion, byte allocates, and byte releases.

## TX\_BYT.H

This is the specification file for the ThreadX Byte Memory Component. All component constants, external interfaces, and data structures are defined in this file.

The global data for the byte memory component is defined in this file and consists of the following data elements:

### ***\_tx\_byte\_pool\_created\_ptr***

This TX\_BYTE\_POOL pointer is the head pointer of the created byte memory pool list. The list is a doubly-linked, circular list of all created byte pool control blocks.

### ***\_tx\_byte\_pool\_created\_count***

This ULONG represents the number of created application byte memory pools.

## TX\_BYTA.C

This file contains ***\_tx\_byte\_allocate***, which is responsible for processing byte memory allocation requests.

## TX\_BYTC.C

This file contains ***\_tx\_byte\_pool\_create***, which is responsible for processing byte memory pool create requests.

**TX\_BYTCL.C**

This file contains **`_tx_byte_pool_cleanup`**, which is responsible for processing byte memory suspension time-outs, byte-memory-suspended thread termination, and thread wait abort requests.

**TX\_BYTD.C**

This file contains **`_tx_byte_pool_delete`**, which is responsible for processing byte memory pool delete requests.

**TX\_BYTI.C**

This file contains **`_tx_byte_pool_initialize`**, which is responsible for initialization of the byte memory pool component.

**TX\_BYTIG.C**

This file contains **`_tx_byte_pool_info_get`**, which is responsible for retrieving information about a byte pool.

**TX\_BYTPP.C**

This file contains **`_tx_byte_pool_prioritize`**, which is responsible for finding the highest priority thread suspended on a byte pool and moving it to the front of the suspension list.

**TX\_BYTR.C**

This file contains **`_tx_byte_release`**, which is responsible for processing byte release requests.

**TX\_BYTS.C**

This file contains **`_tx_byte_pool_search`**, which is responsible for searching through the byte memory pool for a large enough area of free bytes. Fragmented blocks are merged as the search proceeds through the memory area.

**TXE\_BTYA.C**

This file contains **`_txe_byte_allocate`**, which is responsible for checking byte allocate requests for errors.

**TXE\_BYTC.C**

This file contains **`_txe_byte_pool_create`**, which is responsible for checking byte memory pool create requests for errors.

**TXE\_BYTD.C**

This file contains **`_txe_byte_pool_delete`**, which is responsible for checking byte memory pool delete requests for errors.

**TXE\_BYTG.C**

This file contains **`_txe_byte_pool_info_get`**, which is responsible for checking byte pool information retrieval requests for errors.

**TXE\_BYTP.C**

This file contains **`_txe_byte_pool_prioritize`**, which is responsible for checking byte pool prioritize requests for errors.

**TXE\_BYTR.C**

This file contains **`_txe_byte_release`**, which is responsible for checking byte memory release requests for errors.



T H R E A D X



## ***ThreadX API Services***

---

- Entry Function 298
- Byte Memory Services 298
- Block Memory Services 298
- Event Flag Services 299
- Interrupt Control 299
- Message Queue Services 299
- Semaphore Services 300
- Mutex Services 300
- Thread Control Services 301
- Time Services 301
- Timer Services 301

## Entry Function

VOID      **tx\_kernel\_enter**(VOID);

## Byte Memory Services

UINT      **tx\_byte\_allocate**(TX\_BYTE\_POOL \*pool\_ptr,  
                                VOID \*\*memory\_ptr,  
                                ULONG memory\_size, ULONG wait\_option);

UINT      **tx\_byte\_pool\_create**(TX\_BYTE\_POOL \*pool\_ptr,  
                                CHAR \*name\_ptr,  
                                VOID \*pool\_start, ULONG pool\_size);

UINT      **tx\_byte\_pool\_delete**(TX\_BYTE\_POOL \*pool\_ptr);

UINT      **tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get**(TX\_BYTE\_POOL \*pool\_ptr,  
                                CHAR \*\*name, ULONG \*available\_bytes,  
                                ULONG \*fragments, TX\_THREAD \*\*first\_suspended,  
                                ULONG \*suspended\_count,  
                                TX\_BYTE\_POOL \*\*next\_pool);

UINT      **tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize**(TX\_BYTE\_POOL \*pool\_ptr);

UINT      **tx\_byte\_release**(VOID \*memory\_ptr);

## Block Memory Services

UINT      **tx\_block\_allocate**(TX\_BLOCK\_POOL \*pool\_ptr,  
                                VOID \*\*block\_ptr, ULONG wait\_option);

UINT      **tx\_block\_pool\_create**(TX\_BLOCK\_POOL \*pool\_ptr,  
                                CHAR \*name\_ptr, ULONG block\_size,  
                                VOID \*pool\_start, ULONG pool\_size);

UINT      **tx\_block\_pool\_delete**(TX\_BLOCK\_POOL \*pool\_ptr);

UINT      **tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get**(TX\_BLOCK\_POOL \*pool\_ptr,  
                                CHAR \*\*name,  
                                ULONG \*available\_blocks, ULONG \*total\_blocks,  
                                TX\_THREAD \*\*first\_suspended,  
                                ULONG \*suspended\_count,  
                                TX\_BLOCK\_POOL \*\*next\_pool);

UINT      **tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize**(TX\_BLOCK\_POOL \*pool\_ptr);

UINT      **tx\_block\_release**(VOID \*block\_ptr);

## Event Flag Services

```

UINT    tx_event_flags_create(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
                              CHAR *name_ptr);

UINT    tx_event_flags_delete(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr);

UINT    tx_event_flags_get(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
                          ULONG requested_flags, UINT get_option,
                          ULONG *actual_flags_ptr, ULONG wait_option);

UINT    tx_event_flags_info_get(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
                                CHAR **name, ULONG *current_flags,
                                TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
                                ULONG *suspended_count,
                                TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP **next_group);

UINT    tx_event_flags_set(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
                          ULONG flags_to_set, UINT set_option);

```

## Interrupt Control

```

UINT    tx_interrupt_control(UINT new_posture);

```

## Message Queue Services

```

UINT    tx_queue_create(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, CHAR *name_ptr,
                       UINT message_size, VOID *queue_start,
                       ULONG queue_size);

UINT    tx_queue_delete(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr);

UINT    tx_queue_flush(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr);

UINT    tx_queue_front_send(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, VOID *source_ptr,
                          ULONG wait_option);

UINT    tx_queue_info_get(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, CHAR **name,
                          ULONG *enqueued, ULONG *available_storage,
                          TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
                          ULONG *suspended_count, TX_QUEUE **next_queue);

UINT    tx_queue_prioritize(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr);

UINT    tx_queue_receive(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,
                       VOID *destination_ptr, ULONG wait_option);

UINT    tx_queue_send(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, VOID *source_ptr,
                    ULONG wait_option);

```

## Semaphore Services

```

UINT    tx_semaphore_create(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,
                           CHAR *name_ptr, ULONG initial_count);

UINT    tx_semaphore_delete(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr);

UINT    tx_semaphore_get(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,
                        ULONG wait_option);

UINT    tx_semaphore_info_get(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr, CHAR
                             **name,
                             ULONG *current_value,
                             TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
                             ULONG *suspended_count,
                             X_SEMAPHORE **next_semaphore);

UINT    tx_semaphore_prioritize(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr);

UINT    tx_semaphore_put(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr);

```

## Mutex Services

```

UINT    tx_mutex_create(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr, CHAR *name_ptr,
                       UINT inherit);

UINT    tx_mutex_delete(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr);

UINT    tx_mutex_get(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr, ULONG wait_option);

UINT    tx_mutex_info_get(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr, CHAR **name,
                          ULONG *count, TX_THREAD **owner,
                          TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
                          ULONG *suspended_count,
                          TX_MUTEX **next_mutex);

UINT    tx_mutex_prioritize(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr);

UINT    tx_mutex_put(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr);

```

## Thread Control Services

```

UINT    tx_thread_create(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr, CHAR *name_ptr,
                        VOID (*entry_function)(ULONG), ULONG entry_input,
                        VOID *stack_start, ULONG stack_size,
                        UINT priority, UINT preempt_threshold,
                        ULONG time_slice, UINT auto_start);

UINT    tx_thread_delete(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
        TX_THREAD  *tx_thread_identify(VOID);

UINT    tx_thread_info_get(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr, CHAR **name,
                        UINT *state, ULONG *run_count, UINT *priority,
                        UINT *preemption_threshold, ULONG *time_slice,
                        TX_THREAD **next_thread,
                        TX_THREAD **next_suspended_thread);

UINT    tx_thread_preemption_change(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
                        UINT new_threshold, UINT *old_threshold);

UINT    tx_thread_priority_change(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
                        UINT new_priority,  UINT *old_priority);
        VOID    tx_thread_relinquish(VOID);

UINT    tx_thread_resume(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);

UINT    tx_thread_sleep(ULONG timer_ticks);

UINT    tx_thread_suspend(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);

UINT    tx_thread_terminate(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);

UINT    tx_thread_time_slice_change(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
                        ULONG new_time_slice, ULONG *old_time_slice);

UINT    tx_thread_wait_abort(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);

```

## Time Services

```

ULONG    tx_time_get(VOID);
        VOID    tx_time_set(ULONG new_time);

```

## Timer Services

```

UINT    tx_timer_activate(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr);
        UINT    tx_timer_change(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr,
                        ULONG initial_ticks,
                        ULONG reschedule_ticks);
        UINT    tx_timer_create(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr,
                        CHAR *name_ptr,
                        VOID (*expiration_function)(ULONG),
                        ULONG expiration_input, ULONG initial_ticks,
                        ULONG reschedule_ticks, UINT auto_activate);

UINT    tx_timer_deactivate(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr);

UINT    tx_timer_delete(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr);

UINT    tx_timer_info_get(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr, CHAR **name,
                        UINT *active, ULONG *remaining_ticks,
                        ULONG *reschedule_ticks,
                        TX_TIMER **next_timer);

```

A large, light gray watermark of the ThreadX logo is centered on the page. It consists of the word "THREAD" in a sans-serif font, followed by a large, bold "X" that is slightly larger than the other letters. The entire logo is contained within a light gray oval shape.

T H R E A D X

## ***ThreadX Constants***

---

- Alphabetic Listings 304
- Listing by Value 306

**Alphabetic  
Listings**

TX_1_ULONG	1
TX_2_ULONG	2
TX_4_ULONG	4
TX_8_ULONG	8
TX_16_ULONG	16
TX_ACTIVATE_ERROR	0x0017
TX_AND	2
TX_AUTO_ACTIVATE	1
TX_AND_CLEAR	3
TX_AUTO_START	1
TX_BLOCK_MEMORY	8
TX_BYTE_MEMORY	9
TX_CALLER_ERROR	0x0013
TX_COMPLETED	1
TX_DELETE_ERROR	0x0011
TX_DELETED	0x0001
TX_DONT_START	0
TX_EVENT_FLAG	7
TX_FALSE	0
TX_FILE	11
TX_FOREVER	1
TX_GROUP_ERROR	0x0006
TX_INHERIT	1
TX_INHERIT_ERROR	0x001F
TX_IO_DRIVER	10
TX_MAX_PRIORITIES	32
TX_MUTEX_ERROR	0x001F
TX_MUTEX_SUSP	13
TX_NO_ACTIVATE	0
TX_NO_EVENTS	0x0007
TX_NO_INHERIT	0



TX_NO_INSTANCE	0x000D
TX_NO_MEMORY	0x0010
TX_NO_TIME_SLICE	0
TX_NO_WAIT	0
TX_NOT_AVAILABLE	0x001D
TX_NOT_OWNED	0x001E
TX_NULL	0
TX_OPTION_ERROR	0x0008
TX_OR	0
TX_OR_CLEAR	1
TX_POOL_ERROR	0x0002
TX_PRIORITY_ERROR	0x000F
TX_PTR_ERROR	0x0003
TX_QUEUE_EMPTY	0x000A
TX_QUEUE_ERROR	0x0009
TX_QUEUE_FULL	0x000B
TX_QUEUE_SUSP	5
TX_READY	0
TX_RESUME_ERROR	0x0012
TX_SEMAPHORE_ERROR	0x000C
TX_SEMAPHORE_SUSP	6
TX_SIZE_ERROR	0x0005
TX_SLEEP	4
TX_START_ERROR	0x0010
TX_SUCCESS	0x0000
TX_SUSPEND_ERROR	0x0014
TX_SUSPEND_LIFTED	0x0019
TX_SUSPENDED	3
TX_TCP_IP	12
TX_TERMINATED	2
TX_THREAD_ERROR	0x000E

TX_THRESH_ERROR	0x0018
TX_TICK_ERROR	0x0016
TX_TIMER_ERROR	0x0015
TX_TRUE	1
TX_WAIT_ABORT_ERROR	0x001B
TX_WAIT_ABORTED	0x001A
TX_WAIT_ERROR	0x0004
TX_WAIT_FOREVER	FFFFFFFF

**Listing by Value**

TX_DONT_START	0
TX_FALSE	0
TX_NO_ACTIVATE	0
TX_NO_INHERIT	0
TX_NO_TIME_SLICE	0
TX_NO_WAIT	0
TX_NULL	0
TX_OR	0
TX_READY	0
TX_SUCCESS	0x0000
TX_1_ULONG	1
TX_AUTO_ACTIVATE	1
TX_AUTO_START	1
TX_COMPLETED	1
TX_FOREVER	1
TX_DELETED	0x0001
TX_INHERIT	1
TX_OR_CLEAR	1
TX_TRUE	1
TX_2_ULONG	2
TX_AND	2

TX_POOL_ERROR	0x0002
TX_TERMINATED	2
TX_AND_CLEAR	3
TX_PTR_ERROR	0x0003
TX_SUSPENDED	3
TX_4_ULONG	4
TX_SLEEP	4
TX_WAIT_ERROR	0x0004
TX_QUEUE_SUSP	5
TX_SIZE_ERROR	0x0005
TX_GROUP_ERROR	0x0006
TX_SEMAPHORE_SUSP	6
TX_EVENT_FLAG	7
TX_NO_EVENTS	0x0007
TX_8_ULONG	8
TX_BLOCK_MEMORY	8
TX_OPTION_ERROR	0x0008
TX_BYTE_MEMORY	9
TX_QUEUE_ERROR	0x0009
TX_IO_DRIVER	10
TX_QUEUE_EMPTY	0x000A
TX_FILE	11
TX_QUEUE_FULL	0x000B
TX_SEMAPHORE_ERROR	0x000C
TX_TCP_IP	12
TX_MUTEX_SUSP	13
TX_NO_INSTANCE	0x000D
TX_THREAD_ERROR	0x000E
TX_PRIORITY_ERROR	0x000F
TX_16_ULONG	16
TX_START_ERROR	0x0010

TX_NO_MEMORY	0x0010
TX_DELETE_ERROR	0x0011
TX_RESUME_ERROR	0x0012
TX_CALLER_ERROR	0x0013
TX_SUSPEND_ERROR	0x0014
TX_TIMER_ERROR	0x0015
TX_TICK_ERROR	0x0016
TX_ACTIVATE_ERROR	0x0017
TX_THRESH_ERROR	0x0018
TX_SUSPEND_LIFTED	0x0019
TX_WAIT_ABORTED	0x001A
TX_WAIT_ABORT_ERROR	0x001B
TX_MUTEX_ERROR	0x001C
TX_NOT_AVAILABLE	0x001D
TX_NOT_OWNED	0x001E
TX_INHERIT_ERROR	0x001F
TX_MAX_PRIORITIES	32
TX_WAIT_FOREVER	FFFFFFFF

## ***ThreadX Data Types***

---

- TX\_INTERNAL\_TIMER 310
- } TX\_TIMER 310
- } TX\_QUEUE 310
- } TX\_THREAD 311
- } TX\_SEMAPHORE 312
- } TX\_EVENT\_FLAGS\_GROUP 312
- } TX\_BLOCK\_POOL 312
- } TX\_BYTE\_POOL 312
- } TX\_MUTEX 313

```
typedef struct TX_INTERNAL_TIMER_STRUCT
{
    ULONG                tx_remaining_ticks;
    ULONG                tx_re_initialize_ticks;
    VOID                (*tx_timeout_function)(ULONG);
    ULONG                tx_timeout_param;
    struct TX_INTERNAL_TIMER_STRUCT *tx_active_next,
                        *tx_active_previous;
    struct TX_INTERNAL_TIMER_STRUCT **tx_list_head;
} TX_INTERNAL_TIMER;
```

```
typedef struct TX_TIMER_STRUCT
{
    ULONG                tx_timer_id;
    CHAR_PTR            tx_timer_name;
    TX_INTERNAL_TIMER    tx_timer_internal;
    struct TX_TIMER_STRUCT *tx_timer_created_next,
                        *tx_timer_created_previous;
} TX_TIMER;
```

```
typedef struct TX_QUEUE_STRUCT
{
    ULONG                tx_queue_id;
    CHAR_PTR            tx_queue_name;
    UINT                tx_queue_message_size;
    ULONG                tx_queue_capacity;
    ULONG                tx_queue_enqueued;
    ULONG                tx_queue_available_storage;
    ULONG_PTR           tx_queue_start;
    ULONG_PTR           tx_queue_end;
    ULONG_PTR           tx_queue_read;
    ULONG_PTR           tx_queue_write;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *tx_queue_suspension_list;
    ULONG                tx_queue_suspended_count;
    struct TX_QUEUE_STRUCT
                        *tx_queue_created_next,
                        *tx_queue_created_previous;
} TX_QUEUE;
```

```

typedef struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT
{
    ULONG        tx_thread_id;
    ULONG        tx_run_count;
    VOID_PTR     tx_stack_ptr;
    VOID_PTR     tx_stack_start;
    VOID_PTR     tx_stack_end;
    ULONG        tx_stack_size;
    ULONG        tx_time_slice;
    ULONG        tx_new_time_slice;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *tx_ready_next,
                *tx_ready_previous;
    TX_THREAD_PORT_EXTENSION /* See tx_port.h for details */
    CHAR_PTR     tx_thread_name;
    UINT         tx_priority;
    UINT         tx_state;
    UINT         tx_delayed_suspend;
    UINT         tx_suspending;
    UINT         tx_preempt_threshold;
    ULONG        tx_priority_bit;
    VOID         (*tx_thread_entry) (ULONG);
    ULONG        tx_entry_parameter;
    TX_INTERNAL_TIMER tx_thread_timer;
    VOID         (*tx_suspend_cleanup)
                (struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *);
    VOID_PTR     tx_suspend_control_block;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *tx_suspended_next,
                *tx_suspended_previous;
    ULONG        tx_suspend_info;
    VOID_PTR     tx_additional_suspend_info;
    UINT         tx_suspend_option;
    UINT         tx_suspend_status;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *tx_created_next,
                *tx_created_previous;
    VOID_PTR     tx_filex_ptr;
} TX_THREAD;

```

```

typedef struct TX_SEMAPHORE_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_semaphore_id;
    CHAR_PTR tx_semaphore_name;
    ULONG tx_semaphore_count;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *tx_semaphore_suspension_list;
    ULONG tx_semaphore_suspended_count;
    struct TX_SEMAPHORE_STRUCT *tx_semaphore_created_next,

```

```

*tx_semaphore_created_previous;
} TX_SEMAPHORE;

typedef struct TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP_STRUCT
{
    ULONG          tx_event_flags_id;
    CHAR_PTR       tx_event_flags_name;
    ULONG          tx_event_flags_current;
    UINT           tx_event_flags_reset_search;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *tx_event_flags_suspension_list;
    ULONG          tx_event_flags_suspended_count;
    struct TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP_STRUCT
        *tx_event_flags_created_next,
        *tx_event_flags_created_previous;
} TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP;

typedef struct TX_BLOCK_POOL_STRUCT
{
    ULONG          tx_block_pool_id;
    CHAR_PTR       tx_block_pool_name;
    ULONG          tx_block_pool_available;
    ULONG          tx_block_pool_total;
    CHAR_PTR       tx_block_pool_available_list;
    CHAR_PTR       tx_block_pool_start;
    ULONG          tx_block_pool_size;
    ULONG          tx_block_pool_block_size;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT*tx_block_pool_suspension_list;
    ULONG          tx_block_pool_suspended_count;
    struct TX_BLOCK_POOL_STRUCT
        *tx_block_pool_created_next,
        *tx_block_pool_created_previous;
} TX_BLOCK_POOL;

typedef struct TX_BYTE_POOL_STRUCT
{
    ULONG          tx_byte_pool_id;
    CHAR_PTR       tx_byte_pool_name;
    ULONG          tx_byte_pool_available;
    ULONG          tx_byte_pool_fragments;
    CHAR_PTR       tx_byte_pool_list;
    CHAR_PTR       tx_byte_pool_search;
    CHAR_PTR       tx_byte_pool_start;
    ULONG          tx_byte_pool_size;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT*tx_byte_pool_owner;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT*tx_byte_pool_suspension_list;
    ULONG          tx_byte_pool_suspended_count;
    struct TX_BYTE_POOL_STRUCT *tx_byte_pool_created_next,
        *tx_byte_pool_created_previous;
} TX_BYTE_POOL;

```



```
typedef struct TX_MUTEX_STRUCT
{
    ULONG    tx_mutex_id;
    CHAR_PTR    tx_mutex_name;
    ULONG    tx_mutex_ownership_count;
    TX_THREAD    *tx_mutex_owner;
    UINT     tx_mutex_inherit;
    UINT     tx_mutex_original_priority;
    UINT     tx_mutex_original_threshold;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT
    *tx_mutex_suspension_list;
    ULONG    tx_mutex_suspended_count;
    struct TX_MUTEX_STRUCT
    *tx_mutex_created_next,
    *tx_mutex_created_previous;
} TX_MUTEX;
```

A large, light gray oval watermark containing the text "THREADX" in a serif font, centered on the page.

THREADX

## ***ThreadX Source Files***

---

- ThreadX C Include Files 316
- ThreadX C Source Files 316
- ThreadX Port Assembly Language Files 322

## ThreadX C Include Files

---

TX_API.H	Application Interface Include
TX_BLO.H	Block Memory Component Include
TX_BYT.H	Byte Memory Component Include
TX_EVE.H	Event Flag Component Include
TX_INI.H	Initialize Component Include
TX_MUT.H	Mutex Component Include
TX_PORT.H	Port Specific Include (processor specific)
TX_QUE.H	Queue Component Include
TX_THR.H	Thread Control Component Include
TX_TIM.H	Timer Component Include
TX_SEM.H	Semaphore Component Include

## ThreadX C Source Files

---

TX_BA.C	Block Memory Allocate
TX_BPC.C	Block Pool Create
TX_BPCLE.C	Block Pool Cleanup
TX_BPD.C	Block Pool Delete
TX_BPI.C	Block Pool Initialize
TX_BPIG.C	Block Pool Information Get
TX_BPP.C	Block Pool Prioritize
TX_BR.C	Block Memory Release
TXE_BA.C	Block Allocate Error Checking
TXE_BPC.C	Block Pool Create Error Checking
TXE_BPD.C	Block Pool Delete Error Checking
TXE_BPIG.C	Block Pool Information Get Error Checking
TXE_BPP.C	Block Pool Prioritize Error Checking
TXE_BR.C	Block Release Error Checking

---

TX_BYTA.C	Byte Memory Allocate
TX_BYTC.C	Byte Pool Create
TX_BYTCL.C	Byte Pool Cleanup
TX_BYTD.C	Byte Pool Delete
TX_BYTI.C	Byte Pool Initialize
TX_BYTIG.C	Byte Pool Information Get
TX_BYTPP.C	Byte Pool Prioritize
TX_BYTR.C	Byte Memory Release
TX_BYTS.C	Byte Pool Search
TXE_BYTA.C	Byte Allocate Error Checking
TXE_BYTC.C	Byte Pool Create Error Checking
TXE_BYTD.C	Byte Pool Delete Error Checking
TXE_BYTG.C	Byte Pool Information Get Error Checking
TXE_BYTP.C	Byte Pool Prioritize Error Checking
TXE_BYTR.C	Byte Pool Release Error Checking
TX_EFC.C	Event Flag Create
TX_EFCLE.C	Event Flag Cleanup
TX_EFD.C	Event Flag Delete
TX_EFG.C	Event Flag Get
TX_EFI.C	Event Flag Initialize
TX_EFIG.C	Event Flag Information Get
TX_EFS.C	Event Flag Set
TXE_EFC.C	Event Flag Create Error Checking
TXE_EFD.C	Event Flag Delete Error Checking
TXE_EFG.C	Event Flag Get Error Checking
TXE_EFIG.C	Event Flag Information Get Error Checking
TXE_EFS.C	Event Flag Set Error Checking
TX_IHL.C	Initialize High Level
TX_IKE.C	Initialize Kernel Entry Point

---

TX_SC.C	Semaphore Create
TX_SCLE.C	Semaphore Cleanup
TX_SD.C	Semaphore Delete
TX_SG.C	Semaphore Get
TX_SI.C	Semaphore Initialize
TX_SIG.C	Semaphore Information Get
TX_SP.C	Semaphore Put
TX_SPRI.C	Semaphore Prioritize
TXE_SC.C	Semaphore Create Error Checking
TXE_SD.C	Semaphore Delete Error Checking
TXE_SG.C	Semaphore Get Error Checking
TXE_SIG.C	Semaphore Information Get Error Checking
TXE_SP.C	Semaphore Put Error Checking
TXE_SPRI.C	Semaphore Prioritize Error Checking
TX_MC.C	Mutex Create
TX_MCLE.C	Mutex Cleanup
TX_MD.C	Mutex Delete
TX_MG.C	Mutex Get
TX_MI.C	Mutex Initialize
TX_MIG.C	Mutex Information Get
TX_MP.C	Mutex Put
TX_MPC.C	Mutex Priority Change
TX_MPRI.C	Mutex Prioritize
TXE_MC.C	Mutex Create Error Checking
TXE_MD.C	Mutex Delete Error Checking
TXE_MG.C	Mutex Get Error Checking
TXE_MIG.C	Mutex Information Get Error Checking
TXE_MP.C	Mutex Put Error Checking
TXE_MPRI.C	Mutex Prioritize Error Checking

---

TX_QC.C	Queue Create
TX_QCLE.C	Queue Cleanup
TX_QD.C	Queue Delete
TX_QF.C	Queue Flush
TX_QFS.C	Queue Front Send
TX_QI.C	Queue Initialize
TX_QIG.C	Queue Information Get
TX_QP.C	Queue Prioritize
TX_QR.C	Queue Receive
TX_QS.C	Queue Send
TXE_QC.C	Queue Create Error Checking
TXE_QD.C	Queue Delete Error Checking
TXE_QF.C	Queue Flush Error Checking
TXE_QFS.C	Queue Front Send Error Checking
TXE_QIG.C	Queue Information Get Error Checking
TXE_QP.C	Queue Prioritize Error Checking
TXE_QR.C	Queue Receive Error Checking
TXE_QS.C	Queue Send Error Checking
TX_TA.C	Timer Activate
TX_TAA.C	Timer Activate API
TX_TD.C	Timer Deactivate
TX_TDA.C	Timer Deactivate API
TX_TIMCH.C	Timer Change
TX_TIMCR.C	Timer Create
TX_TMD.C	Timer Delete
TX_TIMI.C	Timer Initialize
TX_TIMIG.C	Timer Information Get
TX_TTE.C	Timer Thread Entry
TXE_TAA.C	Timer Activate API Error Checking
TXE_TMCH.C	Timer Change Error Checking

---

TXE_TMCR.C	Timer Create Error Checking
TXE_TDA.C	Timer Deactivate API Error Checking
TXE_TIMD.C	Timer Delete Error Checking
TXE_TIMI.C	Timer Information Get Error Checking
TX_TIMEG.C	Time Get
TX_TIMES.C	Time Set
TX_TC.C	Thread Create
TX_TDEL.C	Thread Delete
TX_TI.C	Thread Initialize
TX_TIDE.C	Thread Identify
TX_TIG.C	Thread Information Get
TX_TPCH.C	Thread Preemption Change
TX_TPRCH.C	Thread Priority Change
TX_TR.C	Thread Resume
TX_TRA.C	Thread Resume API
TX_TREL.C	Thread Relinquish
TX_TSA.C	Thread Suspend API
TX_TSE.C	Thread Shell Entry
TX_TSLE.C	Thread Sleep
TX_TSUS.C	Thread Suspend
TX_TT.C	Thread Terminate
TX_TTO.C	Thread Time-out
TX_TTS.C	Thread Time Slice
TX_TTSC.C	Thread Time-slice Change
TX_TWA.C	Thread Wait Abort
TXE_TC.C	Thread Create Error Checking
TXE_TDEL.C	Thread Delete Error Checking
TXE_TIG.C	Thread Information Get Error Checking
TXE_TPCH.C	Thread Preemption Change Error Checking



---

TXE_TRA.C	Thread Resume API Error Checking
TXE_TREL.C	Thread Relinquish Error Checking
TXE_TRPC.C	Thread Priority Change Error Checking
TXE_TSA.C	Thread Suspend API Error Checking
TXE_TT.C	Thread Terminate Error Checking
TXE_TTSC.C	Thread Time-slice Change Error Checking
TXE_TWA.C	Thread Wait Abort Error Checking

## ThreadX Port Specific Assembly Language Files

---

TX_ILL.[S,ASM,SRC]	Initialize Low Level
TX_TCR.[S,ASM,SRC]	Thread Contest Restore
TX_TCS.[S,ASM,SRC]	Thread Context Save
TX_TIC.[S,ASM,SRC]	Thread Interrupt Control
TX_TIMIN.[S,ASM,SRC]	Timer Interrupt Handling
TX_TPC.[S,ASM,SRC]	Thread Preempt Check (optional)
TX_TS.[S,ASM,SRC]	Tread Scheduler
TX_TSB.[S,ASM,SRC]	Thread Stack Build
TX_TSR.[S,ASM,SRC]	Thread System Return

# ***ASCII Character Codes***

---

● ASCII Character Codes in HEX 324

## ASCII Character Codes in HEX

		<i>most significant nibble</i>							
		0_	1_	2_	3_	4_	5_	6_	7_
<i>least significant nibble</i>	_0	NUL	DLE	SP	0	@	P	'	p
	_1	SOH	DC1	!	1	A	Q	a	q
	_2	STX	DC2	"	2	B	R	b	r
	_3	ETX	DC3	#	3	C	S	c	s
	_4	EOT	DC4	\$	4	D	T	d	t
	_5	ENQ	NAK	%	5	E	U	e	u
	_6	ACK	SYN	&	6	F	V	f	v
	_7	BEL	ETB	'	7	G	W	g	w
	_8	BS	CAN	(	8	H	X	h	x
	_9	HT	EM	)	9	I	Y	i	y
	_A	LF	SUB	*	:	J	Z	j	z
	_B	VT	ESC	+	;	K	[	\	}
	_C	FF	FS	,	<	L	\		
	_D	CR	GS	-	=	M	]	m	}
	_E	SO	RS	.	>	N	^	n	~
	_F	SI	US	/	?	O	_	o	DEL

# Index

---

## **Symbols**

`__tx_thread_context_restore` 88  
`__tx_thread_context_save` 88  
`_application_ISR_entry` 88  
`_tx_block_allocate` 291  
`_tx_block_pool_cleanup` 291  
`_tx_block_pool_create` 291  
`_tx_block_pool_created_count` 291  
`_tx_block_pool_created_ptr` 291  
`_tx_block_pool_delete` 291  
`_tx_block_pool_info_get` 291  
`_tx_block_pool_initialize` 291  
`_tx_block_pool_prioritize` 292  
`_tx_block_release` 292  
`_tx_byte_allocate` 293  
`_tx_byte_pool_cleanup` 294  
`_tx_byte_pool_create` 293  
`_tx_byte_pool_created_count` 293  
`_tx_byte_pool_created_ptr` 293  
`_tx_byte_pool_delete` 294  
`_tx_byte_pool_info_get` 294  
`_tx_byte_pool_initialize` 294  
`_tx_byte_pool_prioritize` 294  
`_tx_byte_pool_search` 294  
`_tx_byte_release` 294  
`_tx_event_flags_cleanup` 289  
`_tx_event_flags_create` 289  
`_tx_event_flags_created_count` 288  
`_tx_event_flags_created_ptr` 288  
`_tx_event_flags_delete` 289  
`_tx_event_flags_get` 289  
`_tx_event_flags_info_get` 289  
`_tx_event_flags_initialize` 289  
`_tx_event_flags_set` 289  
`_tx_initialize_high_level` 266  
`_tx_initialize_kernel_enter` 258, 261, 266  
`_tx_initialize_low_level` 267  
`_tx_initialize_unused_memory` 266  
`_tx_mutex_cleanup` 286  
`_tx_mutex_create` 286  
`_tx_mutex_created_count` 286  
`_tx_mutex_created_ptr` 286  
`_tx_mutex_delete` 286  
`_tx_mutex_get` 286  
`_tx_mutex_info_get` 287  
`_tx_mutex_initialize` 286  
`_tx_mutex_prioritize` 287  
`_tx_mutex_priority_change` 287  
`_tx_mutex_put` 287  
`_tx_queue_cleanup` 281  
`_tx_queue_create` 280  
`_tx_queue_created_count` 280  
`_tx_queue_created_ptr` 280  
`_tx_queue_delete` 281  
`_tx_queue_flush` 281  
`_tx_queue_front_send` 281  
`_tx_queue_info_get` 281  
`_tx_queue_initialize` 281  
`_tx_queue_prioritize` 281  
`_tx_queue_receive` 281  
`_tx_queue_send` 282  
`_tx_semaphore_cleanup` 284  
`_tx_semaphore_create` 283  
`_tx_semaphore_created_count` 283  
`_tx_semaphore_created_ptr` 283  
`_tx_semaphore_delete` 284  
`_tx_semaphore_get` 284  
`_tx_semaphore_info_get` 284  
`_tx_semaphore_initialize` 284  
`_tx_semaphore_prioritize` 284  
`_tx_semaphore_put` 284  
`_tx_thread_context_restore` 227  
`_tx_thread_context_save` 227, 270  
`_tx_thread_create` 261, 264  
`_tx_thread_created_count` 268  
`_tx_thread_created_ptr` 268  
`_tx_thread_current_ptr` 263, 267, 270  
`_tx_thread_delete` 270

<code>_tx_thread_execute_ptr</code> 267	<code>_tx_timer_info_get</code> 279
<code>_tx_thread_highest_priority</code> 268	<code>_tx_timer_initialize</code> 279
<code>_tx_thread_identify</code> 270	<code>_tx_timer_interrupt</code> 279
<code>_tx_thread_info_get</code> 270	<code>_tx_timer_list</code> 275
<code>_tx_thread_initialize</code> 270	<code>_tx_timer_list_end</code> 276
<code>_tx_thread_interrupt_control</code> 270	<code>_tx_timer_list_start</code> 276
<code>_tx_thread_lowest_bit</code> 268	<code>_tx_timer_priority</code> 277
<code>_tx_thread_preempt_check</code> 270	<code>_tx_timer_stack_size</code> 277
<code>_tx_thread_preempt_disable</code> 269	<code>_tx_timer_stack_start</code> 276
<code>_tx_thread_preempted_map</code> 268	<code>_tx_timer_system_clock</code> 275, 278
<code>_tx_thread_preemption_change</code> 271	<code>_tx_timer_thread</code> 276
<code>_tx_thread_priority_change</code> 271	<code>_tx_timer_thread_entry</code> 279
<code>_tx_thread_priority_list</code> 269	<code>_tx_timer_thread_stack_area</code> 277
<code>_tx_thread_priority_map</code> 268	<code>_tx_timer_time_slice</code> 275
<code>_tx_thread_relinquish</code> 271	<code>_tx_version_id</code> 40, 257
<code>_tx_thread_resume</code> 271	<code>_txe_block_allocate</code> 292
<code>_tx_thread_resume_api</code> 271	<code>_txe_block_pool_create</code> 292
<code>_tx_thread_schedule</code> 271	<code>_txe_block_pool_delete</code> 292
<code>_tx_thread_shell_entry</code> 272	<code>_txe_block_pool_info_get</code> 292
<code>_tx_thread_sleep</code> 272	<code>_txe_block_pool_prioritize</code> 292
<code>_tx_thread_special_string</code> 269	<code>_txe_block_release</code> 292
<code>_tx_thread_stack_build</code> 272	<code>_txe_byte_allocate</code> 295
<code>_tx_thread_suspend</code> 272	<code>_txe_byte_pool_create</code> 295
<code>_tx_thread_suspend_api</code> 271	<code>_txe_byte_pool_delete</code> 295
<code>_tx_thread_system_return</code> 272	<code>_txe_byte_pool_info_get</code> 295
<code>_tx_thread_system_stack_ptr</code> 267	<code>_txe_byte_pool_prioritize</code> 295
<code>_tx_thread_system_state</code> 268	<code>_txe_byte_release</code> 295
<code>_tx_thread_terminate</code> 272	<code>_txe_event_flags_create</code> 289
<code>_tx_thread_time_slice</code> 273	<code>_txe_event_flags_delete</code> 290
<code>_tx_thread_time_slice_change</code> 273	<code>_txe_event_flags_get</code> 290
<code>_tx_thread_timeout</code> 273	<code>_txe_event_flags_info_get</code> 290
<code>_tx_thread_wait_abort</code> 273	<code>_txe_event_flags_set</code> 290
<code>_tx_time_get</code> 278	<code>_txe_mutex_create</code> 287
<code>_tx_time_set</code> 278	<code>_txe_mutex_delete</code> 287
<code>_tx_timer_activate</code> 277	<code>_txe_mutex_get</code> 287
<code>_tx_timer_activate_api</code> 278	<code>_txe_mutex_info_get</code> 287
<code>_tx_timer_change</code> 278	<code>_txe_mutex_prioritize</code> 288
<code>_tx_timer_create</code> 278	<code>_txe_mutex_put</code> 288
<code>_tx_timer_created_count</code> 277	<code>_txe_queue_create</code> 282
<code>_tx_timer_created_ptr</code> 277	<code>_txe_queue_delete</code> 282
<code>_tx_timer_current_ptr</code> 276	<code>_txe_queue_flush</code> 282
<code>_tx_timer_deactivate</code> 278	<code>_txe_queue_front_send</code> 282
<code>_tx_timer_deactivate_api</code> 278	<code>_txe_queue_info_get</code> 282
<code>_tx_timer_delete</code> 278	<code>_txe_queue_prioritize</code> 282
<code>_tx_timer_expired</code> 276	<code>_txe_queue_receive</code> 282
<code>_tx_timer_expired_time_slice</code> 275	<code>_txe_queue_send</code> 283

- \_txe\_semaphore\_create 284
- \_txe\_semaphore\_delete 285
- \_txe\_semaphore\_get 285
- \_txe\_semaphore\_info\_get 285
- \_txe\_semaphore\_prioritize 285
- \_txe\_semaphore\_put 285
- \_txe\_thread\_create 273
- \_txe\_thread\_delete 273
- \_txe\_thread\_info\_get 273
- \_txe\_thread\_preemption\_change 273
- \_txe\_thread\_priority\_change 274
- \_txe\_thread\_relinquish 274
- \_txe\_thread\_resume\_api 274
- \_txe\_thread\_suspend\_api 274
- \_txe\_thread\_terminate 274
- \_txe\_thread\_time\_slice\_change 274
- \_txe\_thread\_wait\_abort 274
- \_txe\_timer\_activate\_api 279
- \_txe\_timer\_change 280
- \_txe\_timer\_create 280
- \_txe\_timer\_deactivate\_api 279
- \_txe\_timer\_delete 279
- \_txe\_timer\_info\_get 279

## **Numerics**

68K/ColdFire reset 36

## **A**

- accelerated development 27
- action functions 258
- additional host system considerations 31
- advanced driver issue 231
- after tx\_application\_define 241
- allocation algorithm 80
- allocation of processing 24
- ANSI C 22
- application
  - compiling 30
  - downloading 30
- application define 240
- application definition 258
- application definition function 50
- application resources 68, 73
- application specific modifications 23

- application timer control block 84
- application timers 30, 46, 83, 84
- application's entry point 49
- applications
  - linking 30
- ARM processor reset vector code 35
- ASCII character codes in HEX 324
- asynchronous events 85
- available 73

## **B**

- binary semaphores 69, 72
- black-box 22, 256
- block memory 259
- block memory component 290
- block memory services 298
- block size 78
- Block TX\_MUTEX 74
- Block TX\_QUEUE 67
- Block TX\_THREAD 57
- buffer I/O management 234
- buffered driver responsibilities 235
- buffered I/O advantage 235
- buffering messages 66
- bypass service call error checking 38
- byte memory 259
- byte memory component 293
- byte memory services 298

## **C**

- C library 22, 256
- C pointers 78, 80
- C source code 22
- cache 77
- circular buffer input 231
- circular buffers 231, 233
- circular byte buffers 231
- circular output buffer 233
- coding conventions 260
- comments 264
- compiler 46
- completed 52, 53
- completed state 53
- component body functions 260

- component constants 259
- component initialization 260
- component methodology 256, 258
- component specification file 259
- conditional compilation options 40
- configuration options 38
- constant 46
- constant area 47
- consumer 69
- context 59
- context switch overhead 64
- context switches 25, 64
- context switching 26, 257
- control-loop based applications 27
- corrupt memory 61
- counting semaphores 68, 69, 70, 73
- creating application timers 84
- creating counting semaphores 69
- creating event flag groups 76
- creating memory block pools 77
- creating memory byte pools 80
- creating message queues 66
- creating mutexes 73
- critical sections 56, 68, 73
- current device status 226
- currently executing thread 59
- Customer Support Center 20

## D

- data structures 31
- data types 259
- deadlock 70, 74
- deadlock condition 70
- deadly embrace 70, 74
  - avoiding 71
- debug connection options 30
- debug interface 30
- debugging multi-threaded applications 65
- debugging pitfalls 65
- de-fragmentation 80
- demo application 31
- demo.bld 32, 35, 36, 37
- demo.c 31, 35, 240, 245
- demo.con 35, 36
- demo.ld 32, 35, 37

- demo\_el.bld 32, 39
- demo\_el.ld 32
- demonstration system 240
- deterministic 77
- deterministic response times 25
- development tool initialization 48, 49
- development tools 46
- distribution disk contents 31
- distribution file 245
- distribution files 31
- dividing the application 27
- DMA 231
- downloading target 30
- driver access 224, 225
- driver control 224, 225
- driver example 226
- driver function 224
- driver initialization 224, 225
- driver input 224, 225
- driver interrupts 224, 226
- driver output 224, 225
- driver status 224, 226
- driver termination 224, 226
- dynamic memory 46, 48
- dynamic memory usage 48

## E

- ease of use 27
- embedded application 23
- embedded applications 23, 24
  - definition 23
  - multitasking 24
- embraces avoided 71
- enables automatic MULTI error checking
  - for ThreadX API calls 39
- entry function 298
- entry point 51
- event flag component 288
- event flag group control block 76
- event flag services 299
- event flags 50, 52, 75, 259
- event logging 39
  - sub-option 40
- event logging for associated ThreadX C
  - source file 39



- event logging for the ThreadX
  - demonstration 32
- event notification 68, 69, 72
- example of suspended threads 71
- excessive timers 85
- executing 52
- executing state 52
- execution
  - initialization 45
  - interrupt service routines (ISR) 44
- execution context 59
- execution overview 44
- external events 64

## **F**

- fast memory 48
- faster time to market 27
- FIFO order 67, 70, 73, 79, 81
- first-available RAM 50
- first-fit 80
- first-in-first-out (FIFO) 54
- fixed-size 78
- fixed-size memory 77
- fixed-sized messages 66
- fragmentation 77, 80
- fragmented 81
- function calls 59
- function prototypes 259

## **G**

- global data 260
- global variables 48
- globals 62
- Green Hills MULTI
  - configuration options 38
  - debugger 39
  - stack usage tools 37
- Green Hills MULTI build file
  - event logging for ThreadX demo 32
  - event logging throughout ThreadX C library 32
  - how to build ThreadX C library 32
  - initialization file tx\_ill 34
  - ThreadX demo 32
- Green Hills MULTI development
  - environment 29

- Green Hills MULTI tools 31

## **H**

- hardware devices 224
- hardware interrupt 46
- heterogeneous 54
- hidden system thread 85
- high performance 256
- high throughput I/O 235
- high-frequency interrupts 88
- highly portable 27
- Hitachi SH reset 36
- host computers 30
- host considerations 30
- host machines 30

## **I**

- I/O buffer 234
- I/O buffering 231
- I/O drivers 223, 224
- I/O error counts 226
- improved responsiveness 25
- increased throughput 26
- information about the ThreadX port 31
- In-house kernels 23
- initial execution 241
- initialization 44, 45, 48
- initialization component 266
- initialization process 48
- Initialize 259
- initialized data 46, 48
- in-line assembly 256
- input bytes 226
- input-output lists 236
- installation of ThreadX 33
- instruction 46
- instruction area 46
- interrupt control 86, 299
- interrupt frequency 237
- interrupt latency 88
- interrupt management 237
- interrupt service routines 44, 45
- interrupting 55
- interrupts 44, 50, 85

invalid pointer 62  
 ISR template 87  
 ISRs 44, 80, 229

## J

JTAG 30

## L

large local data 61  
 linker 46  
 linker control file  
   allocation of target memory for event logging 32  
 linker control file for specifying where demo application resides in target memory 32  
 local storage 57  
 local variable 59  
 local variables 59  
 locator 46  
 logic for circular input buffer 232  
 logic for circular output buffer 233  
 logical AND/OR 75  
 low-level initialization 49

## M

main 49, 51  
 main function 49  
 malloc calls 80  
 memory 52  
 memory areas 46  
 memory block pool control block 79  
 memory block pools 77  
 memory block size 78  
 memory byte pool control block 82  
 memory byte pools 79, 82  
 memory pitfalls 61  
 memory pools 48, 50  
 Memory Usage 46  
 memory usage 46  
 merged 80  
 message destination pitfall 68  
 message queue capacity 66  
 message queue services 299

message queues 65  
 message size 66  
 microkernel 22  
 minimum stack size 59  
 MIPS reset 36  
 misuse of thread priorities 62  
 modifications 23  
 MULTI architecture simulators 36  
 MULTI debugger 35  
 MULTI environment  
   CONNECT button 35  
   DEBUG button 35  
   project BUILD button 35  
 MULTI processor simulation  
   demo system 35  
 multi-threaded 26, 52  
 multi-threading 62, 64, 65, 256  
 mutex component 285  
 mutex mutual exclusion 73  
 mutexes 50, 52, 57, 63, 72, 73, 259  
 mutual exclusion 68, 70, 72, 74

## N

naming convention 32  
 non-reentrant 62  
 number of threads 57

## O

observing the demonstration 244  
 one-shot timer 83  
 output bytes 226  
 overhead 26, 81  
   associated with multi-threaded kernels 26  
   reducing 26  
 overview 240  
   ThreadX 22  
 overwriting memory blocks 79, 82  
 own 70, 72  
 ownership count 73

## P

packet I/O 231  
 path for the development tools 33

- periodic interrupt source 30
- periodic timer interrupt 37
- periodic timer interrupt source 31
- periodic timers 83
- periodics 46
- physical memory 48
- picokernel 22, 23
- picokernel architecture 22
- pitfall 72, 74
- polling 26, 226
- pool capacity 78, 80
- pool memory area 78, 81
- portability 23, 27
- PowerPC reset 36
- preempt 56
- preemption 55
- preemption-thresholds 56, 57, 63, 64, 72
- preemptive scheduling 25
- premium package 31
- principal design elements of ThreadX 256
- Prior to real-time kernels 25
- priorities 58
- priority 54
- priority ceiling 56
- priority inheritance 57, 63, 73, 74
- priority inversion 56, 62, 63, 72, 74
- priority overhead 64
- priority zero 85
- priority-based scheduling 25
- process 24
- process oriented 24
- processing bandwidth 62, 88
- processor allocation 27
- processor allocation logic 27
- processor isolation 26
- processor reset 44
- processor-independent 26
- producer-consumer 69
- product distribution 31
- protecting the software investment 27
- public resource 65, 68, 72, 77, 80, 83

## Q

- queue component 280
- queue control 67

- queue memory area 66
- queue messages 52
- queues 48, 50, 259

## R

- RAM 47, 59, 67
- RAM requirements 30
- readme.txt 30, 31, 37, 38, 40, 87
- ready 52
- ready state 52
- ready thread 44
- real-time 23, 77, 82, 224
- real-time software 23
- real-time systems 44, 56
- re-created 54
- recursive algorithms 61
- redundant polling 26
- reentrancy 62
- reentrant 62
- reentrant function 62
- register 263
- register variables 256
- relative time 85
- remove error checking code from final
  - image 39
- reset 49, 50
- reset file 36
- reset.68 36
- reset.arm 35
- reset.mip 36
- reset.ppc 36
- reset.sh 36
- responsive processing 56
- re-started 54
- re-starting 54
- ROM 46, 47
- ROM requirements 30
- round-robin scheduling 54
- run-time 56, 62, 80, 82
- run-time behavior 27
- run-time environment 61
- run-time image 22

## S

- scalability 256
- scalable 22, 256, 259
- scheduling 50
- scheduling loop 59
- scheduling threads 44
- semaphore component 283
- semaphore control block 70, 74
- semaphore services 300
- semaphores 50, 52, 72, 259
- semi-independent program segment 50
- service call time-outs 30
- service prototypes 31
- simple 230
- simple driver initialization 226, 228
- simple driver input 228
- simple driver output 229, 230
- simple driver shortcomings 230
- simplicity 256
- slow memory 48
- small example system 35
- software components 258
- software maintenance 26
- source code
  - ThreadX 30
- source code indentation 264
- stack 45, 59
- stack area is too small 61
- stack memory area 61
- stack overflow 37
- stack pointer 58
- stack size 65, 240
- stack sizes 37
- stack space 57
- stacks 48, 50
- standard package 31
- starvation 56, 63
- starve 62
- static memory 46
- static memory usage 46
- static variables 48
- statics 62
- steps to build a ThreadX application 34
- suspended 52
- suspended state 52

- suspension 87
- system description 256
- system entry 258
- system equates 31
- system include files 257
- system reset 49, 51
- system stack 46, 48
- system stack setup 38
- system throughput 26

## T

- target considerations 30
- target hardware 30
- target memory for event logging 32
- target's address space 59, 66, 78, 81
- tasks 24, 25
- tasks vs. threads 24
- template for application development 36
- terminated 52
- terminated state 53
- Thread 0 242
- Thread 1 242
- Thread 2 242
- Thread 5 243
- thread component 267
- thread control 57
- thread control services 301
- thread counters 37
- thread create function 38
- thread creation 57
- thread execution 44, 50
- thread execution states 52
- thread model 24
- thread preemption 52
- thread priorities 54, 62
- Thread Priority Pitfalls 62
- thread scheduling 54
- thread scheduling loops 44, 50
- thread stack area 59
- thread stacks sizes 60
- thread starvation 63
- thread state transition 52
- thread states 52
- thread suspension 67, 69, 70, 76, 78, 81, 237

- thread's control block 57
- thread's stack 57, 59
- thread's stack area 59
- threads 24, 25, 27, 50, 54, 57, 259
- Threads 3 and 4 243
- ThreadX
  - primary purpose of 24
- ThreadX ANSI C library 257
- ThreadX benefits 25
  - improve time-to-market 27
- ThreadX C include files 316
- ThreadX C library
  - binary version 32
- ThreadX components 259
- ThreadX constants 262
- ThreadX data types 19
- ThreadX design goals 256
- ThreadX file header example 265
- ThreadX file names 261
- ThreadX function names 263
- ThreadX global data 263
- ThreadX installation 33
- ThreadX library 32
- ThreadX local data 263
- ThreadX managed interrupts 86
- ThreadX member names 263
- ThreadX name space 261
- ThreadX overview 22
- ThreadX packages 31
- ThreadX port specific assembly language
  - files 322
- ThreadX services 89
- ThreadX source files 316
- ThreadX struct and typedef name 262
- ThreadX timer interrupt 37
- ThreadX version ID 40
- throughput 26
- tick counter 85
- time 52
- time services 301
- time slicing 55
- time-outs 46, 67
- timer accuracy 84
- timer component 275
- timer execution 84
- timer interrupt setup 30
- timer intervals 83
- timer services 83, 301
- timer setup 83
- timer ticks 55, 83, 84, 85
- timer-related functions 30
- timer-related services 31
- timers 50, 259
- time-slice 55, 58
- time-slicing 30, 83
- troubleshooting 37
- tx 49
  - tx.a 32, 33, 34, 35
  - tx.bld 32, 35
  - TX\_AND\_CLEAR 75
  - tx\_api.h 31, 33, 34, 57, 67, 70, 74, 76, 79, 82, 84, 257, 262
  - tx\_application\_define 34, 49, 50, 51, 227, 240, 241, 258, 266
  - TX\_AUTO\_START 241
  - TX\_BA.C 291
  - TX\_BLO.H 290
  - tx\_block\_allocate 86, 94, 100
  - tx\_block\_delete 86
  - TX\_BLOCK\_MEMORY (0x08) 58
  - TX\_BLOCK\_POOL 79
  - tx\_block\_pool\_create 96, 102
  - tx\_block\_pool\_delete 98
  - tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get 86
  - tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize 79, 86
  - tx\_block\_release 104
  - TX\_BPC.C 291
  - TX\_BPCLE.C 291
  - TX\_BPD.C 291
  - TX\_BPI.C 291
  - TX\_BPIG.C 291
  - TX\_BPP.C 292
  - TX\_BR.C 292
  - TX\_BYT.H 293
  - TX\_BYTA.C 293
  - TX\_BYTC.C 293
  - TX\_BYTCL.C 294
  - TX\_BYTD.C 294
  - tx\_byte\_allocate 106, 114
  - TX\_BYTE\_MEMORY (0x09) 58
  - TX\_BYTE\_POOL 82
  - tx\_byte\_pool\_create 110, 116

tx\_byte\_pool\_delete 112  
 tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get 86  
 tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize 81, 86  
 tx\_byte\_release 118  
 TX\_BYTI.C 294  
 TX\_BYTIG.C 294  
 TX\_BYTPP.C 294  
 TX\_BYTR.C 294  
 TX\_BYTS.C 294  
 TX\_COMPLETED (0x01) 58  
 TX\_DISABLE\_ERROR\_CHECKING 38, 39, 257  
 TX\_DISABLE\_ERROR\_CHECKNG 89  
 TX\_DISABLE\_STACK\_CHECKING 38  
 TX\_EFC.C 289  
 TX\_EFCLE.C 289  
 TX\_EFD.C 289  
 TX\_EFG.C 289  
 TX\_EFI.C 289  
 TX\_EFIG.C 289  
 TX\_EFS.C' 289  
 TX\_ENABLE\_EVENT\_FILTERS 40  
 TX\_ENABLE\_EVENT\_LOGGING 39  
 TX\_ENABLE\_MULTI\_ERROR\_CHECKIN G 39  
 TX\_EVE.H 288  
 TX\_EVENT\_FLAG (0x07) 58  
 TX\_EVENT\_FLAG\_GROUP 76  
 tx\_event\_flags\_create 120, 128  
 tx\_event\_flags\_delete 122  
 tx\_event\_flags\_get 75, 86, 124  
 tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get 86  
 tx\_event\_flags\_set 75, 87, 130  
 TX\_IHL.C 266  
 tx\_ihl.c 39  
 TX\_IKE.C 266  
 tx\_ike.c 261  
 TX\_ILL 267  
 tx\_ill 37  
 tx\_ill assembly file 30, 83  
 TX\_INI.H 266  
 TX\_INITIALIZE\_IN\_PROGRESS 262  
 tx\_interrupt\_control 86, 87  
 TX\_IO\_BUFFER 234  
 TX\_IO\_DRIVER (0x0A) 58  
 tx\_kernel\_enter 34, 49, 51, 258, 266  
 TX\_MC.C 286  
 TX\_MIG.C 287  
 TX\_MINIMUM\_STACK 59  
 TX\_MPC.C 287  
 TX\_MPRI.C 287  
 tx\_mutex\_create 134  
 tx\_mutex\_delete 136  
 tx\_mutex\_get 72, 138  
 tx\_mutex\_info\_get 140  
 tx\_mutex\_prioritize 73, 142  
 tx\_mutex\_put 72, 144  
 TX\_MUTEX\_SUSP (0x0D) 58  
 tx\_next\_buffer 235  
 tx\_next\_packet 234  
 TX\_NO\_EVENT\_INFO 39  
 TX\_OR\_CONSUME 75  
 tx\_port.h 19, 31, 33, 257, 263  
 TX\_QC.C 280  
 TX\_QCLE.C 281  
 TX\_QD.C 281  
 TX\_QF.C 281  
 TX\_QFS.C 281  
 TX\_QI.C 281  
 TX\_QIG.C 281  
 TX\_QP.C 281  
 TX\_QR.C 281  
 TX\_QS.C 282  
 TX\_QUE.H 280  
 TX\_QUEUE 262  
 tx\_queue\_create 146  
 tx\_queue\_delete 148  
 tx\_queue\_flush 150  
 tx\_queue\_front\_send 87, 152  
 tx\_queue\_info\_get 87, 154  
 tx\_queue\_prioritize 67, 87, 156  
 tx\_queue\_receive 65, 87, 158  
 tx\_queue\_send 64, 65, 87, 162  
 TX\_QUEUE\_SUSP (0x05) 58  
 TX\_READY (0x00) 58  
 tx\_run\_count 58  
 TX\_SC.C 283  
 TX\_SCLE.C 284, 286  
 TX\_SD.C 284, 286  
 tx\_sdriver\_initialize 226  
 tx\_sdriver\_input 228  
 tx\_sdriver\_output 230

TX_SEM.H 283, 285	TX_TI.C 270
TX_SEMAPHORE 70	TX_TIC 270
tx_semaphore_create 164	TX_TIDE 270
tx_semaphore_delete 166	TX_TIDE.C 270
tx_semaphore_get 68, 87, 168	TX_TIG.C 270
tx_semaphore_info_get 87, 170	TX_TIM.H 275
tx_semaphore_prioritize 70, 87, 172	tx_tim.h 261
tx_semaphore_put 68, 87, 174	TX_TIMCH.C 278
TX_SEMAPHORE_SUSP (0x06) 58	TX_TIMCR.C 278
TX_SG.C 284, 286	TX_TIMD.C 278
TX_SI.C 284, 286	tx_time_get 85, 87, 206
TX_SIG.C 284	tx_time_se 85
TX_SLEEP (0x04) 58	tx_time_set 85, 87, 208
TX_SP.C 284, 287	TX_TIMEG.C 278
TX_SPRI.C 284	TX_TIMER 84
tx_state 58	tx_timer_activate 87, 210, 220
TX_SUSPENDED (0x03) 58	tx_timer_change 87, 212
TX_TA.C 277	tx_timer_create 214
TX_TAA.C 278	tx_timer_deactivate 87, 216
TX_TC.C 269	tx_timer_delete 218
tx_tc.c 39, 261, 264	tx_timer_info_get 87
TX_TCR 269	TX_TIMES.C 278
TX_TCS 270	TX_TIMI.C 279
TX_TD.C 278	TX_TIMIG.C 279
TX_TDA.C 278	TX_TIMIN 279
TX_TDEL 270	TX_TPC 270
TX_TDEL.C 270	TX_TPCH.C 271
TX_TERMINATED (0x02) 58	TX_TPRCH.C 271
TX_THR.H 267	TX_TR.C 271
tx_thr.h 263	TX_TRA.C 271
TX_THREAD 48, 263	TX_TREL.C 271
tx_thread_create 52, 176, 184	TX_TS 271
tx_thread_current_ptr 59, 65	TX_TSA.C 271
tx_thread_delete 180, 204	TX_TSB 272
tx_thread_id 263	TX_TSE.C 272
tx_thread_identify 59, 87, 182	TX_TSLE.C 272
tx_thread_info_get 87	TX_TSR 272
tx_thread_preemption_change 188	TX_TSUS.C 272
tx_thread_priority_change 190	TX_TT.C 272
tx_thread_relinquish 54, 192	TX_TTE.C 279
tx_thread_resume 194	TX_TTO.C 273
tx_thread_sleep 196	TX_TTS.C 273
tx_thread_suspend 198	TX_TTSC.C 273
tx_thread_terminate 53, 200	TX_TWA.C 273
tx_thread_time_slice_change 202	txe.bld 32, 39, 40
tx_thread_wait_abort 87	TXE_BA.C 292

TXE\_BPC.C 292  
 TXE\_BPD.C 292  
 TXE\_BPIG.C 292  
 TXE\_BPP.C 292  
 TXE\_BR.C 292  
 TXE\_BTYA.C 295  
 TXE\_BYTC.C 295  
 TXE\_BYTD.C 295  
 TXE\_BYTG.C 295  
 TXE\_BYTP.C 295  
 TXE\_BYTR.C 295  
 TXE\_EFC.C 289  
 TXE\_EFD.C 290  
 TXE\_EFG.C 290  
 TXE\_EFIG.C 290  
 TXE\_EFS.C 290  
 TXE\_MD.C 287  
 TXE\_MIG.C 287  
 TXE\_MPRI.C 288  
 TXE\_QC.C 282  
 TXE\_QD.C 282  
 TXE\_QF.C 282  
 TXE\_QFS.C 282  
 TXE\_QIG.C 282  
 TXE\_QP.C 282  
 TXE\_QR.C 282  
 TXE\_QS.C 283  
 TXE\_SC.C 284, 287  
 TXE\_SD.C 285  
 TXE\_SG.C 285, 287  
 TXE\_SIG.C 285  
 TXE\_SP.C 285, 288  
 TXE\_SPRI.C 285  
 TXE\_TAA.C 279  
 TXE\_TC.C 273  
 TXE\_TDA.C 279  
 TXE\_TDEL.C 273  
 TXE\_TIG.C 273  
 TXE\_TIMD.C 279  
 TXE\_TIMI.C 279  
 TXE\_TMCH.C 280  
 TXE\_TMCR.C 280  
 TXE\_TPCH.C 273  
 TXE\_TRA.C 274  
 TXE\_TREL.C 274  
 TXE\_TRPC.C 274

TXE\_TSA.C 274  
 TXE\_TT.C 274  
 TXE\_TTSC.C 274  
 TXE\_TWA.C 274  
 types of program execution 44  
 typical thread stack 60

## U

UART 231  
 UINT 263  
 ULONG 263  
 un-deterministic 57, 77  
 un-deterministic behavior 82  
 un-deterministic priority inversion 63, 75  
 uninitialized data 46, 48  
 unnecessary processing 26  
 unpredictable behavior 50  
 user-supplied main function 49  
 using ThreadX 33

## V

version ID 40  
 VOID 263

## W

watchdog services 46

## X

x\_kernel\_enter 34